Thank you for choosing the Great Wall vehicle.

The more familiar you become with your vehicle, the more you will like it and the better you will be able to use its features. Therefore, you are kindly required to:

Read this manual carefully before using your vehicle. There are important tips about using your vehicle in this manual that will help you make the best use of your vehicle's technology. Additionally, you will get very useful information about driving safety, road safety and maintenance of your vehicle value.

We sincerely wish you a safe and happy journey!

1/2026

Overview

Contain instructions for use, explanation of symbol meanings, etc.

Vehicle statement

This vehicle is a multi-purpose model. It not only has the comfort of an urban SUV, but also has a certain degree of trafficability and extrication ability for the models equipped with all-terrain control system, differential lock and other equipment to meet the needs of users in a variety of scenarios.

For off-road driving, be sure to perform a series of all-terrain exercises on a fully licensed professional venue. All-terrain driving requires sufficient training and rich experience, or the installation of other configurations. Otherwise, there will be risks of personal injury and destruction of vehicles and articles. Please drive with caution. Before off-road driving, be sure to carefully survey the route and road conditions.

The driver should use all on-board functions under the premise of ensuring safety.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all of standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult your vehicle dealer.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications

Now we can buy not only genuine parts, but also a variety of other non-genuine parts and accessories that are suitable for our vehicle. The use of non-authentic spare parts and accessories may adversely affect vehicle safety, even if these products have been approved by the relevant national or regional authorities. Great Wall Motors do not afford any responsibility and do not offer any warranty certificate if the owner decides to install or replace non-authentic spare parts and acessories.

It is forbidden to modify vehicles with non-authentic products. Modifications with non-authentic products may affect vehicle operability, safety or durability and may even violate government regulations. In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues arising from modification are not covered by warranty of quality.

It is forbidden to modify suspension, braking system and so on, which may adversely affect the operate safety of vehicle.

It is forbidden to modify the fuse box of the vehicle. Otherwise, the electrical system may be adversely affected.

Modification to electronic components, software and circuits will affect their function and the normal operation of other related components, especially safety-related systems. These modifications will affect the operation safety of the vehicle and increase the risk of accidents and injury. Therefore, please do not modify pipeline, electrical parts and software.

Declaration of conformity



The Multimedia, TPMS Sensor, CEM, Smart key, Radar module, Telematics BOX, Wireless power charger devices equipped on this vehicle all comply to MCMC requirements.

The shown label is the certification mark approved for compliance to standards accorrding to the Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000.

Validity of this manual

All information provided in this manual is up to date at the time of publication. However, due to continuous improvement of the product, the contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice.

Depending on the vehicle specifications, vehicles shown in the figure may differ from your vehicle.

The display information (including pictures, icons, texts and so on) included in this manual are only for instructions. According to the vehicle model configuration, software version and theme settings, the actual information displayed may be different. Refer to the actual model for specific information.

About symbols

⚠ WARNING

This indicates a warning.

Failure to observe these warnings may result in serious injury or death. Such warnings tell you what to do or what not to do so as to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.

⚠ CAUTION

This indicates a caution.

Failure to observe these cautions may result in damage to the vehicle or its equipment. Such cautions tell you what to do or what not to do so as to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and its equipment.

ℹ NOTICE

This indicates a reminder.

Such tips contain helpful information that may be useful to you.

(▷ Page X)

This symbol indicates that more details can be seen on this page.

Tips for safety

⚠ WARNING

General precautions for your driving:

› Drive only when fully alert: the alcohol, drug, medicine or anesthetic will slow down driver's response time and affect judgment and coordination, which makes the vehicle get out of control and results in severe safety accidents.

› Drive carefully: be sure to drive carefully. Always keep an eye on improper movements of other drivers or pedestrians on the road so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.

› Concentrate on driving: be attentive when driving. Anything that distracts the driver's attention, such as adjusting control buttons, call up and answer a mobile phone or reading, may give rise to a crash accident and serious injury to you, passengers on the vehicle and other people.

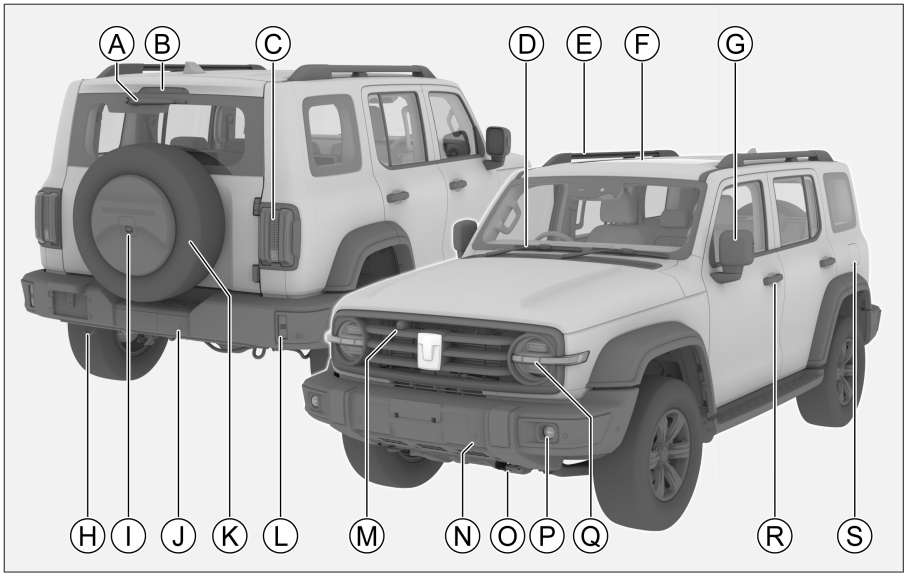
⚠ WARNING

When getting out of the vehicle, do not leave children, pets or someone who needs help in the vehicle alone.

› Because the children, pets or someone who needs help cannot get out of the vehicle and save themselves. The temperature in the vehicle may be too high or too low in different weather, which may cause the passengers or pets in the vehicle injury even death.

› If the children or pets touch the key, it may cause the vehicle to move on its own and pose a danger to themselves and traffic conditions, including starting the vehicle, releasing the parking brake, shifting gears, operating the doors and windows.

Appearance



C737BE683076

Ⓐ Rear wiper 61

Ⓑ High-mounted brake light

Ⓒ Rear combination light 53

Ⓓ Front wiper 59

Ⓔ Roof rack 50

Ⓕ Sunroof 34

Ⓖ Side mirrors 47

Ⓗ Rear tow hook 278

Ⓘ Due to different model configurations, it may be used for:

Around view monitor (AVM) 132

Parking assist 133

Reverse tracking 136

Ⓙ Collision avoidance radar 131

Ⓚ Spare tyre 262

Ⓛ Rear fog light 53

Ⓜ Around view monitor (AVM) 132

Ⓝ Collision avoidance radar 131

Ⓞ Front tow hook 278

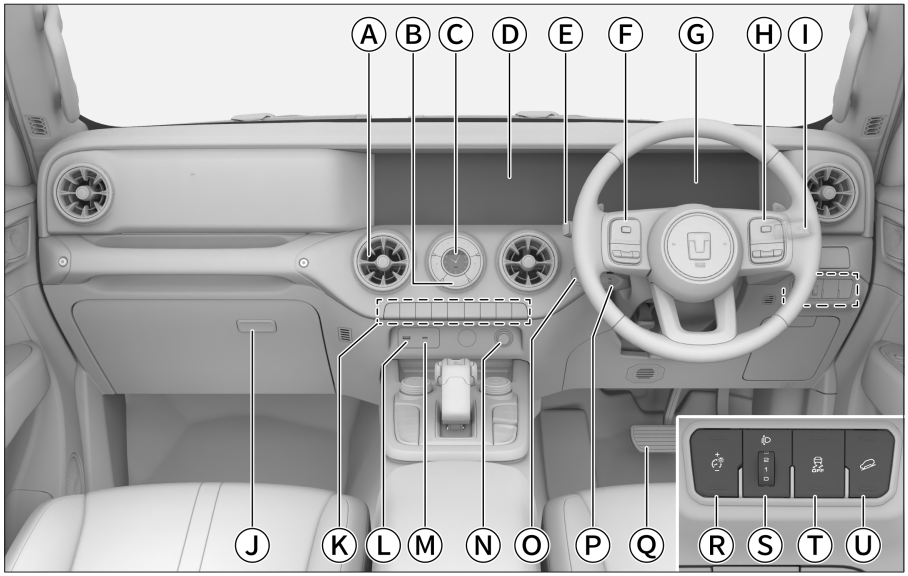
Ⓟ Front fog light 53

Ⓠ Front combination light 53

Ⓡ Door handle 23

Ⓢ Fuel tank door 40

Interior trim



AF0137307A24

Ⓐ A/C outlet 68

Ⓑ Hazard warning light button 57

Ⓒ Electronic clock

Ⓓ Audio visual system display 211

Ⓔ Wiper control combination switch 59

Ⓕ Audiovisual system button 206

Ⓖ Instrument panel 178
Instrument indicator lights 182

Ⓗ Instrument panel adjustment button 180

Ⓘ Light control combination switch 53

Ⓙ Glove box 72

Ⓚ A/C system buttons 63

Ⓛ Audio visual system USB port 207

Ⓜ USB-Type-C power supply port 76

Ⓝ Standby power supply port 76

Ⓞ Power supply switch 102

Ⓟ Cruise control system lever, used for:
Adaptive cruise control system 158
Intelligent cruise control system 162

Ⓠ Brake pedal

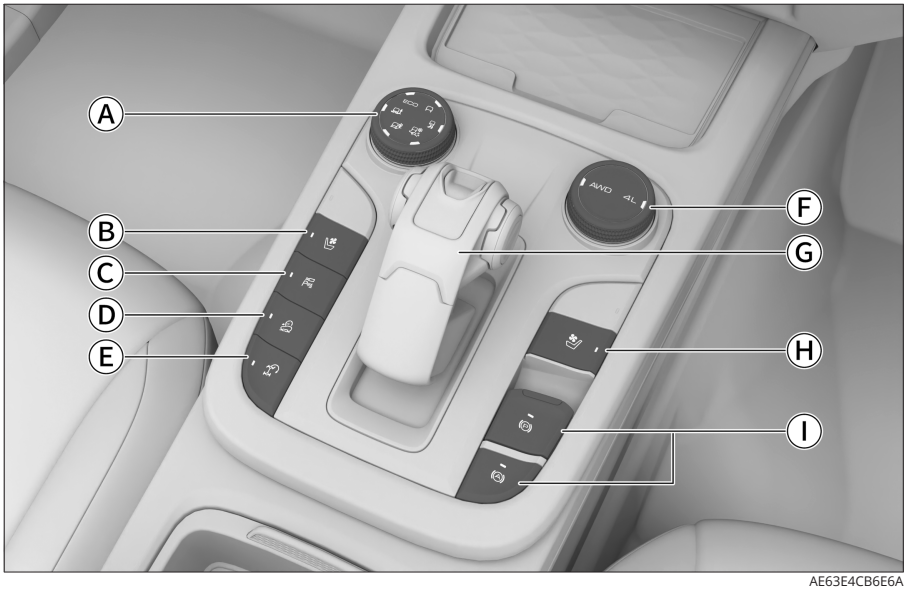
Ⓡ Instrument panel brightness adjustment button 57

Ⓢ Light height adjustment knob 57

Ⓣ Electronic stability control switch 174

Ⓤ Hill descent control system switch 171

Auxiliary instrument panel



AE63E4CB6E6A

Ⓐ All-terrain mode knob 118

Ⓑ Front passenger seat ventilation button 43

Ⓒ Depending on the configuration, the button is used for:

Collision avoidance radar 131

Around view monitor (AVM) 132

Parking assist 133

Reverse tracking 136

Ⓓ Off-road cruise control button 167

Ⓔ Steering assist button 169

Ⓕ 4WD mode knob 117

Ⓖ Shifter 109

Ⓗ Driver seat ventilation button 43

Ⓘ Electronic parking brake button 106

Table of contents

1 Operation — This Chapter introduces the method for operating on-board vehicle equipment, such as keys, doors, windows and seats.

2 Driving — This Chapter introduces the driving information, such as vehicle start, gear shifting and instrument of the vehicle.

3 Audiovisual system — This Chapter introduces the Bluetooth telephone, system setting and other audio-visual system related information.

4 Safety — This Chapter introduces the functional equipment, such as anti-theft system and seat belts.

5 Emergency — This Chapter introduces the treatment methods for vehicle failures such as flat tyre and battery loss.

6 Maintenance — This Chapter introduces the routine inspection and regular maintenance of the vehicle.

7 Technical data — This Chapter introduces the vehicle parameters, identification number and other information.

8 Index — This Chapter introduces the alphabetical index in this manual.

Operation

Keys....18
About the key....18
Button introduction....19
Taking out the mechanical key....20
Battery replacement....21
Door locks....23
Locking and unlocking through the passive entry system....23
Locking and unlocking with central control buttons....24
Unlocking with the interior handle....24
Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key....24
Locking in emergencies....25
Manual tailgate....26
Child safety lock....28
Auto driving lock....29
Automatic resetting....29
Auto unlock upon collision....29
Anti-misoperation lock....29
Unlock after power off....29
Windows....30
Driver window switch....30
Passenger side window switches....31
Thermal protection function....31
Anti-pinch function....31
Window initialization....32
Automatic window closing function....32
Sunroof....34
Opening and closing the sunroof....34
Sun visor....35
Anti-pinch function....35
Thermal protection function....36
Windows raising upon locking....36
Automatic closing....36
Initialisation....37
Bonnet....38
Opening the bonnet....38
Closing the bonnet....38
Refuelling....40
Refuelling method....40
Fuel information....41
Seats....42
Headrests....42
Power seat....43
Front seats ventilation....43
Driver's seat memory/welcome....44
Rear seat adjustment....45
Rear armrests....46
Rearview mirrors....47
Automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror....47
Side mirrors....47
Side mirrors settings....48
Steering wheel....49
Adjustment method....49
Horn....49

Roof rails 50
Roof rack 50
Light control 52
Light settings 52
Light control combination switch ..53
Daytime running light.....56
Front fog lights auxiliary lighting ...56
Emergency flasher 57
Headlight height adjustment knob 57
Instrument brightness adjustment 57
Interior lights 57
Wiper control.....59
Front wiper 59
Rear wiper.....61
Front wiper intelligent speed down-shift function 62
A/C system 63
Air conditioning control panel 63
A/C settings interface 64
A/C control 67
A/C outlet 68
Mobile phone wireless charging.....70
Instructions.....70
Interior equipment 72
Sun visor.....72
Vanity mirror.....72
Storage devices 72
Power supply socket.....76

Driving

Driving procedures.....80
Before driving.....80
Driving 81
Precautions for passengers.....83
Parking the vehicle 84
Economic driving.....84
Advice on driving in harsh environments.....86
Driving in foggy weather 86
Driving in the rain 86
Fording drive.....87
In hot weather 88
Driving in cold season 89
Off-road driving alerts.....91
Advice on driving during run-in period 94
Tyres 94
Brake pad.....94
Transmission 94
Hybrid electric vehicle.....96
About hybrid vehicle.....96
Power battery recovery.....97
High-voltage warning signs 97
Energy recovery 100
Battery safety switch 100
Emergency cut-off point 100
Power supply switch..... 102
Power supply switch..... 102
Starting and shutting down the vehicle

..... 104
Starting the vehicle 104
Shutting down the vehicle 105
Parking brake 106
Tips for safety 106
Electronic parking brake 106
Automatic transmission 109
Introduction to gear positions 109
Gear shifting 109
Unlocking the P gear position in an emergency 111
Crawling function 113
Starting off 113
Parking 114
Steering wheel assist mode 116
Switching method 116
All-terrain control system 117
All-terrain control system introduction 117
4WD switching 117
All-terrain switching 118
Operating precautions for driving 4WD vehicles 119
OFF ROAD mode 121
OFF ROAD mode 121
Differential lock switch 123
Differential lock introduction 123
Rear axle electric differential lock 123
Front axle electric differential lock 124
Parking system 127
Parking system sensor 127
Parking settings 129
Collision avoidance radar 131
Around view monitor (AVM) 132
Parking assist 133
Reverse tracking 136
Tyre pressure monitoring system .. 138
Tyre pressure monitoring system introduction 138
Tyre pressure monitoring and alert 139
Driver fatigue warning system 140
Introduction of fatigue driving reminder 140
Instructions 140
Driver assist system 142
Driver assist system sensor 142
Front assist system 145
Rear side assist system 152
Lane assist system 154
Traffic sign information 156
Adaptive cruise control system ... 158
Intelligent cruise control system 162
Off-road cruise control assist system 167
Off-road cruise control 167
Turn assist 169
Hill descent control (HDC) 171
Hill descent control system introduction 171

Instructions for use 171
Auxiliary control system 172
Safety tips for auxiliary control systems 172
Anti-lock brake system 172
Electronic brakeforce distribution system 173
Brakeforce assist system 173
Traction control system 173
Rollover prevention system 173
Secondary collision mitigation system 173
HHC (Hill-start Hold Control) 173
Electric power steering system ... 174
Electronic stability control system 174
Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system 175
Emission control system 176
Reminder 176
Oxygen sensor 176
Catalytic converter 176
Turbocharger 177
Fuel evaporation control unit 177
Crankcase emission control unit 177
On-board diagnostic system 177
Instrument panel 178
Instrument panel overview 178
Instrument panel control 180
Instrument indicator lights 182
Instrument indicator lights 182
Power management system 192
Introduction to the power supply management system 192
Information you should know 193
Trailer towing 195
Towing instructions 195
Driving instructions 195
Trailer hitch connector 197
Trailer power socket 198
Technical parameters 199

Audiovisual system

Safety tips 204
Tips for safety 204
About the use 204
About the radio 205
About USB storage devices 205
About Bluetooth 205
Panel introduction 206
Steering wheel buttons 206
Control panel 207
External devices 207
Display screen introduction 209
About multimedia display screen 209
Central display screen status bar 209
Function introduction 211
Home 211
Shortcut panel 212
System settings 212
Local media 216

Online media 217
Communication..... 217
Power..... 219
Voice control..... 219
I Space 220
Connection..... 221
Users..... 222
Messages centre 223
App store..... 223
System manager 223
Weather..... 224
Navigation..... 224
About online upgrade 227

Safety

Seat belts 230
Safety tips..... 230
Wearing the seat belt properly ... 231
Pretensioner seat belts..... 232
Three-point seat belt instructions 233
Airbags 235
Tips for safety..... 235
Airbags..... 236
Front airbags 236
Front passenger airbag switch.... 238
Side airbag 239
Curtain airbags..... 240
Child restraint system..... 242
Safety instructions for child seat 242
Fixing points for a child seat 243
Recommended child seat type ... 244
Installation of child seat..... 246
Vehicle anti-theft system 250
System introduction 250
Instructions..... 250
Emergency shut-off system..... 252
Emergency cut-off system 252
Event data recorder..... 253
Event data recorder (EDR) 253

Emergency

On-board tools..... 260
Location of on-board tools..... 260
Vehicle lifting 261
Vehicle lifting position 261
Spare tyre..... 262
Spare tyre introduction..... 262
Removing and restoring 262
Spare tyre replacement 265
Tyre failure symptom 265
Preparation for spare tyre replacement..... 265
Method for spare tyre replacement 266
In the case of a vehicle accident..... 269
In the case of a vehicle accident. 269
Jump start 273
Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery..... 273
Jump start method..... 273

Engine overheating 275
Engine overheating 275
Towing 277
Towing with a professional vehicle 277
Tow hook 278
Tow rope 278
In case of vehicle failure 279
Emergency rescue system 281
Button introduction 281

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance .. 286
Engine compartment 287
Safety tips 287
Fluid level 288
Engine oil 289
Engine/electric drive system coolant 290
Brake fluid 290
Windscreen washer fluid 291
Radiator, fan 292
Battery 292
Safety labels and signs 293
Engine compartment warning label 293
Radiator cover warning label 293
Battery warning label 293
Part replacement 295
Fuses 295
Wiper blade 297
Light maintenance 298
Vehicle maintenance 300
Tyre maintenance 300
Tailgate strut maintenance 303
Protection films for new vehicles 304
Sunroof maintenance 304
Exterior maintenance 305
Interior maintenance 308
Anti-corrosion measures 311
Long-term storage of the vehicle 312

Technical data

Vehicle identification 316
Vehicle identification number 316
Engine number (E20NA) 317
Overall parameters 318
Power parameters 318
Tyre specifications 318
Wheel parameters 319
Braking parameters 319
Seat parameters 320
Fluid parameters 320
Radio frequency device information 321

Index

Alphabetical index 324

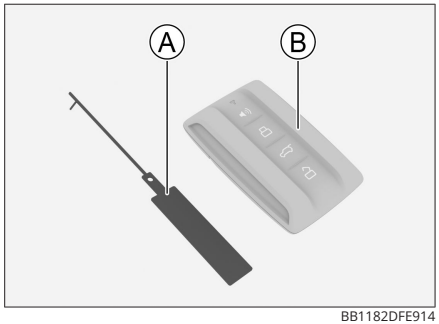
1 Operation

Keys 18
Door locks 23
Windows 30
Sunroof 34
Bonnet 38
Refuelling 40
Seats 42
Rearview mirrors 47
Steering wheel 49
Roof rails 50
Light control 52
Wiper control 59
A/C system 63
Mobile phone wireless charging 70
Interior equipment 72

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About the key



BB1182DFE914

Ⓐ Key number tag

Ⓑ Smart key

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

NOTICE

› Store the key number tag in a safe place. The key number tag has a code necessary for getting a new mechanical key. You may only request a new mechanical key from the authorised service centre by using this code.

› When purchasing or transferring the vehicle, hand over the key number tag to the purchaser.

CAUTION

The smart key contains electronic components. Follow the following instructions to prevent damage to the smart key:

› Do not place the key in a hot place, such as on the instrument panel.

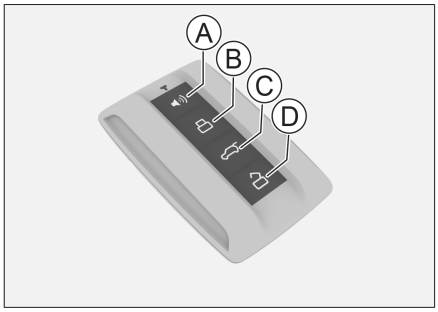
› Do not disassemble it randomly.

› Do not use the key to strike other objects or drop it.

› Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic cleaner.

› Do not place the key with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobiles.

Button introduction



24C52319FAAE

Ⓐ Vehicle locating button

Ⓑ Lock button

Ⓒ Tailgate control button

Ⓓ Unlock button

Unlock button

To unlock all the doors and the tailgate, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights flash twice.

Lock button

To lock all the doors and the tailgate, press the lock button, and the hazard warning lights flash once.

NOTICE

When locking the door, check whether all the doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are closed fully if the hazard warning lights do not flash.

Vehicle locating button

When all the doors and the tailgate are locked, press the vehicle locating button to turn on the vehicle locating function so that you can find the vehicle quickly in the parking lot and other places.

Press it again during the vehicle locating warning to cancel the vehicle locating function.

You can set the vehicle locating mode through the 【Car】→【Lights】→【Personalisation】 on the multimedia display screen

Tailgate control button

Press the tailgate control button to unlock the tailgate and press the tailgate microswitch to open the tailgate within 30 seconds after unlock.

CAUTION

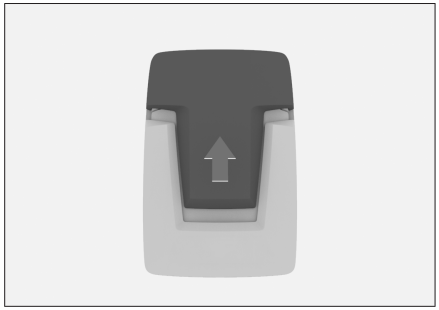
› Do not modify the transmission frequency, enlarge transmission power (including additionally installing a radio frequency power amplifier), connect an external antenna, or use other transmitting antennas without permission.

› When using the function, do not cause harmful interference to all kinds of legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is detected, stop using the function and take measures to eliminate the interference before continued use.

› Using the function may be subject to interference from various radio devices, resulting in a brief failure of function.

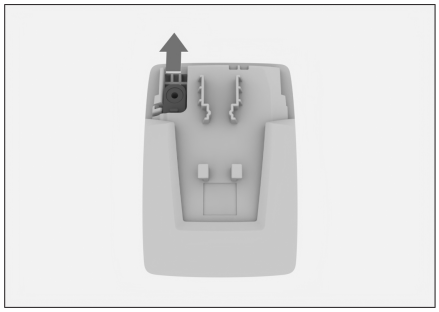
Taking out the mechanical key

1. Push the key cover in the direction shown and take it out .



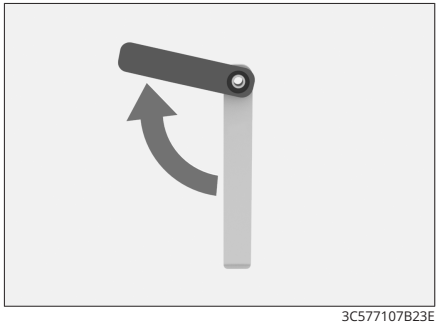
13514FCD0838

2. Push the mechanical key outwards and take it out.



DCD7C6649681

3. Rotate the handle of the mechanical key to the operating position.



3C577107B23E

CAUTION

The handle of the mechanical key can only be rotated in one direction, and the maximum opening angle is about 135°.

4. After using the mechanical key, please place it to its original position in the direction shown and install the key cover.



CCBA00E65682

⚠ CAUTION

When placing the mechanical key, make sure to confirm the insertion direction. Otherwise, the mechanical key may get stuck and be difficult to remove.

Battery replacement

⚠ WARNING

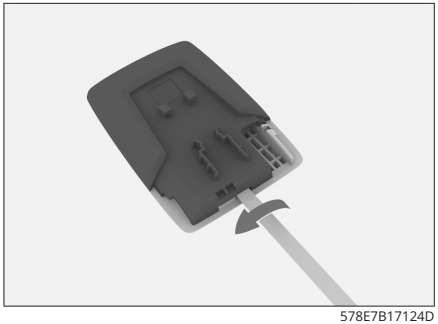
The vehicle key contains a button battery.

- The button battery in the vehicle key is dangerous. Regardless it is a new battery or an old one, always keep it away from children.
- If the button battery is swallowed or put into any part of the body, it may cause severe or fatal injury in 2 hours or less.
- Seek medical attention if you suspect the battery is swallowed or placed in any part of the body.
- Please dispose of used batteries according to local laws. Incorrect disposal of used batteries will damage the environment.

⚠ CAUTION

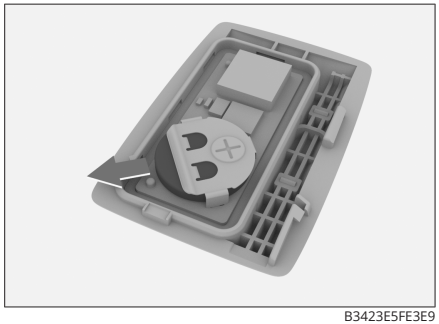
- During operation, be sure to dry your hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- There is a precise circuit installed inside the smart key, which must be prevented from being damaged by impact, water, high temperature, humidity, exposure to sunlight, corrosive liquid, etc.
- Do not touch or move any other parts.
- The positive and negative terminals of the battery must be installed correctly.
- Be careful not to lose parts when replacing the battery.

1. Take out the mechanical key. (▷ Page 20)
2. Use a flat-head screwdriver to gently pry open the key and take out the back cover of the key.



578E7B17124D

3. Check the position of the old battery and directions of its positive and negative terminals, then take out the old battery and replace it with a new battery. Make sure that the directions of its positive and negative terminals are installed correctly.



B3423E5FE3E9

Battery model: CR2032

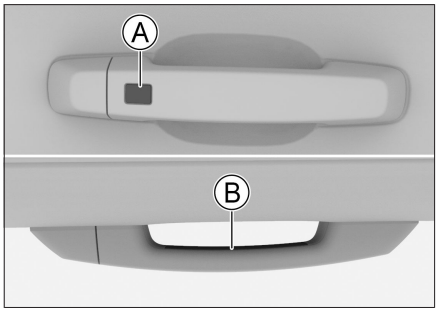
4. Assemble the key and test whether all the key buttons can work normally.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Locking and unlocking through the passive entry system

When carrying a smart key, use the passive entry system to lock and unlock the doors.



2B45B784D9EC

Ⓐ Lock sensor

Ⓑ Unlock sensor

Unlocking

To unlock all the doors and the tailgate, touch the unlock sensor and the turn signal lights flash twice.

Locking

To lock all the doors and the tailgate, touch the lock sensor and the turn signal lights flash once.

NOTICE

When locking the door, check whether all the doors, the tailgate, and the bonnet are fully closed if the indicators do not flash.

NOTICE

- Operate only the doors where the smart key is detected.
- Do not lock and unlock the doors at the same time.
- Operating the door handle with gloves may prevent the door from being unlocked or locked.
- The radio waves of the passive entry system may be weak. Surrounding radio equipment or barriers can affect communication between the smart key and the vehicle, causing the system to malfunction.
- The passive entry system will be deactivated for 3 seconds each time the door is successfully locked or unlocked.

NOTICE

About outer door handle:

After washing the vehicle in cold weather, please promptly wipe off any water stains on the gaps of the outer door handles. The accumulated water stains may freeze on the handle movement mechanism, causing the door handle to jam. For example, after the door handle is pulled up, it may not be able to return to its original position, resulting in the door not being able to close properly. In this case, repeatedly pull the door handle several times to remove ice buildup.

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons



04226AB3C07F

The central control button is located on the driver door. Press the central control buttons to lock or unlock all doors.

If the button indicator light turns on, it indicates that the doors are locked.

If the button indicator light turns off, it indicates that the doors are unlocked.

Unlocking with the interior handle



97944AE538E5

When a vehicle door is locked, pulling the interior handle will unlock it. Pull the handle again to open the door.

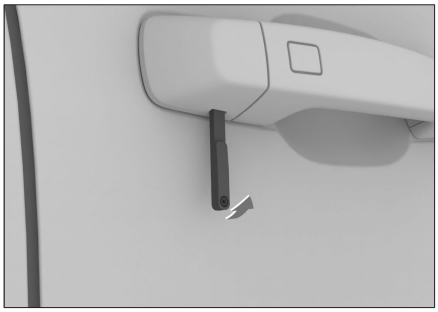
NOTICE

Make sure that the child lock function is turned off when opening the rear door with the interior handle; otherwise, the rear door cannot be opened.

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key

1. Insert the mechanical key into the hole under the door lock cover, turn the key in the direction of the arrow, and pry the cover down.

For how to get the mechanical key, see Taking out the mechanical key. (▷ Page 20)



46FDA87151C0

2. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, turn the key to lock or unlock the door.



C784254C5671

NOTICE

When the mechanical key is used to unlock the vehicle door, the vehicle anti-theft alarm may be triggered. (▷ Page 250)

Locking in emergencies



1697E5443765

The front passenger door and the rear door are equipped with the door emergency locking device.

Insert the mechanical key into the emergency lock hole, turn it in the direction of the arrow on the emergency lock hole, and then close the door to lock the door.

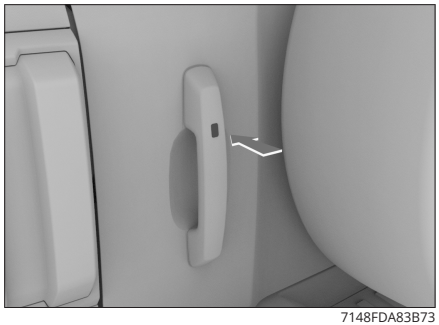
For how to get the mechanical key, see Taking Out the Mechanical Key. (▷ Page 20)

NOTICE

If you need to use this method to lock the door, it means that the electric door lock system is faulty. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Manual tailgate

Opening



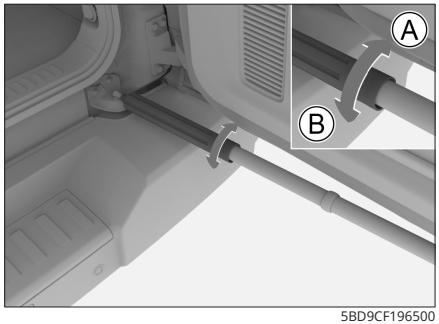
7148FDA83B73

› When carrying the smart key, press the tailgate microswitch, and then pull the door handle outwards to open the tailgate.

› When the power supply is set to OFF mode, press the tailgate control button on the key, press the tailgate microswitch within 30 seconds, and then pull the door handle outwards to open the tailgate.

› When the driver door is unlocked, press the tailgate microswitch, and then pull the door handle outwards to open the tailgate.

Keeping the tailgate open



5BD9CF196500

Ⓐ Unlocking the tailgate check

Ⓑ Locking the tailgate check

Only operate the tailgate check when the tailgate is fully open.

When closing the tailgate, be sure to rotate the tailgate check to the unlocked state.

CAUTION

When the tailgate is opened, the right tail light and retro-reflector will be obstructed by the tailgate and the spare tyre. When parking on the road, use a warning triangle or other equipment to remind other vehicles and pedestrians to take care in accordance with local laws if the tailgate is opened.

Closing



F2F6718F97C7

Ⓐ Assist grip

1. Inspect the tailgate check and confirm that it is unlocked.
2. Pull the tailgate assist handle and release the assist handle before the tailgate is fully closed.

3. Push the tailgate from the outside of the vehicle to close it completely.

Emergency unlock

1. Get into the vehicle, and use the mechanical key or a flat head screwdriver to pry off the emergency cover plate located inside the tailgate.

   For how to obtain the mechanical key, please refer to taking out the mechanical key.(▷ Page 20)



03B5CFDE8DC9

NOTICE

For some models, press the position ▼ as indicated by the arrow on the emergency cover plate to open the cover plate.

2. Pull the latch and push the tailgate outwards to unlock and open it.



2BAD4F2B7B86

NOTICE

If this method is used to open the tailgate, it means that the vehicle has malfunctioned. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

WARNING

- When closing the tailgate manually, be sure to press the tailgate outside to ensure it is completely closed. Using the auxiliary handle to close the tailgate may easily pinch your hand and result in serious injury.
- Never drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Never carry any passengers in the luggage area.
- When opening or closing the tailgate with others nearby, ensure no injuries occur.

- When closing the tailgate, be careful not to catch any object like a bag or a necktie.
- Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Failure to do so may cause accidental injury.
- Be cautious when opening or closing the tailgate in windy conditions, as the tailgate may suddenly move under strong wind.
- If the tailgate check is not locked, the tailgate may close. Opening or closing the tailgate on an incline requires more effort than that on the level ground. Thus, you should watch out for it opening or closing by itself.

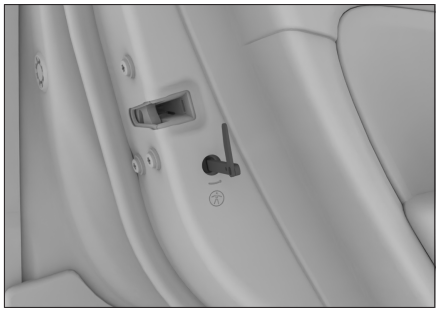
CAUTION

- Never use excessive force when opening the tailgate, as this may damage it.
- If the tailgate is frozen or covered in snow and ice, do not force it open. First, use the A/C heating function to warm the interior of the vehicle, and then open the tailgate.

  If it is necessary to open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.
- Do not install or paste any accessories to the tailgate check.
- Do not lean, climb, or place your luggage on the tailgate check; avoid applying horizontal force.

Child safety lock

If there are children in the vehicle, it is recommended to secure them to the rear seats for enhanced safety. Child safety locks are equipped on the rear doors to prevent children from accidentally opening the doors.



4310CADFFA29

Insert the mechanical key into the lock hole and turn it in the direction shown in the figure to activate the child safety lock. Rotate reversely to deactivate the child safety lock.

For how to get the mechanical key, see Taking out the mechanical key.
(▷ Page 20)

WARNING

Only the rear doors are equipped with child safety locks. If a child sits alone on a rear seat, activate the child safety locks on both rear doors at the same time to avoid accidents caused by accidental opening of the doors.

NOTICE

After activating the child safety lock, you can only open the door by pulling the door handle from outside.

Auto driving lock

All the doors and the tailgate will be locked automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

NOTICE

Make sure that all doors and the tailgate are completely closed before driving.

Automatic resetting

When the bonnet is closed and all doors and the tailgate are locked, if the power supply mode and the status of all doors and the tailgate remain unchanged after the doors from outside the vehicle are unlocked (except the mechanical key) for a certain period, all doors and the tailgate will automatically lock.

Auto unlock upon collision

With power supply in ON mode, when system detects a collision, all doors will be unlocked automatically.

Anti-misoperation lock

When the last door is closed with the driver's door locked, all locked doors will be unlocked automatically.

Unlock after power off

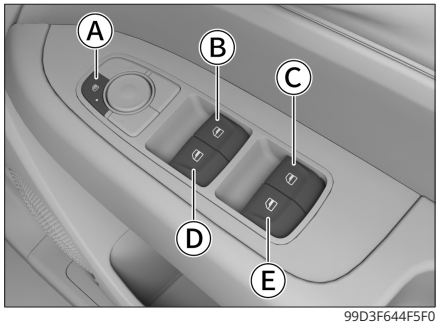
You can turn on or off this function through the【Car】→【Outside vehicle】→【Door lock】→【Unlock after power off】interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the function is activated, all the doors and the tailgate will automatically unlock when the vehicle power supply is set to OFF mode.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driver window switch



99D3F644F5F0

Ⓐ Window lock switch

Ⓑ Driver window switch

Ⓒ Rear right window switch

Ⓓ Front passenger window switch

Ⓔ Rear left window switch

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull up and hold the corresponding switch until the window reaches the proper position.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the heads and hands of all passengers are away from the window before closing the window. Otherwise, an extremely serious injury will be caused.

One-push raising or lowering

Press the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically open completely. To stop it halfway, just pull up the switch.

Pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically close completely. To stop it halfway, just press the switch.

ℹ NOTICE

Some models are equipped with this function on the driver window only, depending on the configurations.

⚠ CAUTION

In low-temperature environment, freezing may occur between the window glass and the window frame, resulting in the failure of the glass to move normally. In this case, do not force to operate it to avoid damage to the lift mechanism. After the interior temperature rises and the ice on the glass thaws, the glass can be raised and lowered normally.

Locking windows

When the window lock switch is pressed, the window switches on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding windows.

Pressing the window lock switch again will recover the function of the rear window switches.

⚠ WARNING

When there are children in the vehicle, it is recommended that they should sit in the relatively safe rear seats and the window lock function should be enabled.

Passenger side window switches

On the handrail of the passenger side door, there is a window switch which can be used to open or close the corresponding window.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection may be triggered to protect the glass lifter motor after repeated operation of the window switch. At this time, the window switch will temporarily fail. The window switch automatically returns to normal after the lifter motor cools down.

Anti-pinch function

During the process of raising the window, if there is an obstacle between the window frame and the window, when the pressure reaches a certain value, the window will stop raising and automatically descend a certain distance.

ℹ NOTICE

Depending on vehicle configuration, this function may not be provided for your vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- At the moment when the window is completely raised, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.
- When the window triggers the emergency raising function, the window anti-pinch function will not work.

ℹ NOTICE

- Under severe conditions, such as low temperature and severe bumping, the anti-pinch function may be triggered in the process of window glass raising, and the window cannot be raised smoothly. At this time, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point to close the window.

› When the one-push raising or lowering function is abnormal, the anti-pinch function will be disabled at the same time, and initialization can be performed to restore it to normal.

Window initialization

When the window-related function is abnormal, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Set the power supply to the ON mode.
2. Pull up the window switch equipped with one-push raising or lowering function beyond the pressure point until the window is completely closed and then hold for about 3 seconds.
3. Operate the window switch again so that the window goes through the one-push raising and one-push lowering.

NOTICE

When the one-push raising or lowering function is disordered or every time the battery is disconnected and re-energized, windows with one-push function need to be initialized.

Automatic window closing function

Automatic window closing

You can set the automatic window closing function through the【Car】→【Outside】→【Windows】interface on the multimedia display screen.

› 【Speed-based Automatic Window Closing】: after the speed-based automatic window closing is selected, if the vehicle speed exceeds the set value, all windows will automatically close.

› 【Automatic Window Closing On Locking】: after the function is activated, all windows will automatically close when the vehicle is locked.

Convenient closing

With the power supply in OFF mode and all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or on the door handle, and all windows will automatically close.

Press the key unlock or lock button to make a pause in the lift during automatic window raising.

NOTICE

› If the one-push raising or lowering function of the windows fails due to a battery power failure or other reasons, the automatic window closing function cannot automatically close the windows. In this case, it is recommended to initialise the windows.

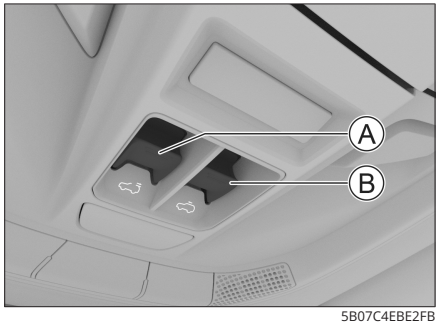
› If the window encounters an obstacle during the automatic closing, the anti-pinch function may be activated, preventing the window from closing.

› Ensure that the windows are completely closed before leaving.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening and closing the sunroof



5B07C4EBE2FB

Ⓐ Sunroof open button (press down)

Ⓑ Sunroof close button (press down)

Sliding opening and closing

Manual operation

› Press and hold the sunroof open button, and the sunroof gradually slides open.

› Press and hold the sunroof close button, and the sunroof closes.

› To stop the sunroof halfway, release the button.

Automatic operation

› Press the sunroof open button and release it. The sunroof automatically opens to a comfortable position. Press and release the sunroof open button again. The sunroof automatically opens completely.

› Press the sunroof close button and release it. The sunroof automatically closes.

› To stop the sunroof halfway, press the button again.

Tilt opening and closing

Manual operation

› Press and hold the sunroof close button, and the sunroof gradually tilts open.

› Press and hold the sunroof open button, and the sunroof closes.

› To stop the sunroof halfway, release the button.

Automatic operation

› Press the sunroof close button and release it, and the sunroof tilts open to the maximum angle and stops.

› Press the sunroof open button and release it, and the sunroof closes.

› To stop the sunroof halfway, press the button again.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not extend your hands or head outside through the sunroof when driving. Accidental contact with exterior objects or emergency braking may cause severe injuries or even death.

› To close the sunroof, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injuries.

› Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

Sun visor

When slide to open the sunroof, the sun visor opens automatically to a certain extent according to the opening angle of the sunroof.

When the sunroof is closed and only the sun visor is opened, pull the sun visor back manually to open it.

Pull the sun visor back manually to close it.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not allow children to operate the sun visor.

› When closing sun visor, be careful not to clip other people's hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injury.

› Never close the sun visor when the sunroof is opened or not fully closed, so as to prevent the sun visor from coming off and causing serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

› Do not squeeze the sunroof visor with force, so as to prevent the sun visor from falling off or being damaged.

› When parking a vehicle for a long time, close the sunroof visor to prevent the interior trim from being damaged due to the interior high temperature if it is exposed to the sun for a long time.

Anti-pinch function

If the sunroof encounters an obstruction during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and return a certain distance.

⚠ WARNING

› Despite the anti-pinch function, there is still a risk of pinching.

In special cases (e.g. if the obstruction is thin), the closing process cannot be interrupted. Therefore, despite the anti-pinch function, it is important to ensure that the closing area of the sunroof remains unobstructed.

- Do not attempt to use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- At the moment when the sunroof is completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if any object is stuck.
- When closing the sunroof manually, the anti-pinch function will not work. Be careful not to pinch fingers or other body parts.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection function may be triggered to protect the sunroof motor after repeated operation of the sunroof switch. At this time, the sunroof function will be temporarily disabled, and the sunroof will fail to be operated. The sunroof switch will automatically return to normal after the motor cools down.

Windows raising upon locking

You can set the automatic window raising upon locking through the 【Car】 → 【Outside vehicle】 → 【Windows】 interface on the multimedia display screen. After the function is activated, all windows will be automatically raised when the vehicle is successfully locked.

NOTICE

If an obstacle is found during the automatic window raising, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that all windows are completely raised.

Automatic closing

- With the power supply in OFF mode, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle, and the sunroof close automatically.
- When the power supply is in OFF mode, if the rainfall and light sensor senses rain, etc., the sunroof will close automatically.

NOTICE

In case of the little rain, the sunroof may not automatically close. It must be confirmed that the sunroof is completely closed before leaving.

- The sunroof will close automatically if the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h in the driving.

NOTICE

If an obstacle is found during the automatic window raising, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that all windows are completely raised.

Initialisation

When errors occur in the system, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Set the power supply to the ON mode, press the sunroof closing button, and release the button after the sunroof is tilted to the maximum position.
2. Press the sunroof closing button again and hold it for more than 5 seconds. At this time, the sunroof will move with a "click" sound (which is a normal phenomenon). When the sunroof returns to its maximum tilting position, release the button and initialisation is complete.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening the bonnet

1. You can pull the handle located under the instrument panel twice continuously at the driver side, and the bonnet will pop out a gap.



7661C0A47050

2. Reach your hand into the gap and lift the bonnet. The bonnet will automatically rise to open.

NOTICE

In the low temperature environment, the bonnet strut may not be able to support the bonnet automatically. When such a situation occurs, you may lift the bonnet manually to open it.

Closing the bonnet

Pull the bonnet downwards and close it by pressing it downwards with the appropriate force at a height of 20 to 30 cm from the lock.

WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is fully closed and securely locked prior to driving. Otherwise, it may open unexpectedly during the driving, leading to an accident.

CAUTION

- Before closing the bonnet, make sure that there is no debris left inside the engine compartment.
- Do not use excessive force when closing the bonnet. Failure to do so may deform the bonnet.

› If the bonnet is not locked properly, reopen it and then apply greater force to close it again, ensuring it is fully locked. Do not press the bonnet to lock it while it is in a partially locked state, as this may cause deformation of the bonnet.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Refuelling method

1. When the driver's door is unlocked, press the end of the fuel tank door near the rear end of the vehicle, and the fuel tank door will pop open gently.
2. Turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to open it and fix the fuel tank cap cable to the fuel tank door so as to avoid making the vehicle body dirty.



C777EBE4B9F9

⚠ WARNING

› When loosening the fuel tank cap, do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound disappears, you can open it slowly.

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may be sprayed from the fuel tank filler due to large internal pressure, resulting in a personal injury.

› Take care of such matters during refuelling:

The engine must be shut down.

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Never answer or make calls.

Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

⚠ CAUTION

› Do not add too much fuel. Just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.

› Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling. Otherwise, the painted surfaces may be corroded.

› Add only the designated fuel.

3. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a “click” sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap is installed in place.

NOTICE

The fuel tank cap must be installed in place. Otherwise, the engine system malfunction warning light may come on.

4. Close the fuel tank door.

CAUTION

Never operate the fuel tank door violently, so as to prevent the locking mechanism from deformation and break which may result in the failure to open or close the fuel tank door.

Fuel information

Item	Data
Fuel specification	E10/E20 (Thailand) Unleaded petrol RON 92 or higher (Indonesia and Malaysia)
Fuel tank capacity [L] (reference value)	75

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Headrests

Adjusting the headrest

When the headrest centre height is adjusted to align with the top of your ears, it will provide maximum protection.

WARNING

Do not adjust the headrest during driving.



40BAB340E018

› To raise the headrest, directly pull it upward to the desired position.

› To lower the headrest, push the headrest down while pressing and holding the headrest adjust button until the headrest reaches the desired position.

NOTICE

The lowest position of the headrest is not its using position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.

NOTICE

After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to confirm it is locked firmly.

Removing the headrest

To remove the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjustment button, and pull out the headrest.

If necessary, please adjust the seat backrest to remove the headrest.

CAUTION

After the headrest is installed, push it up or down to make sure that it is locked in place.

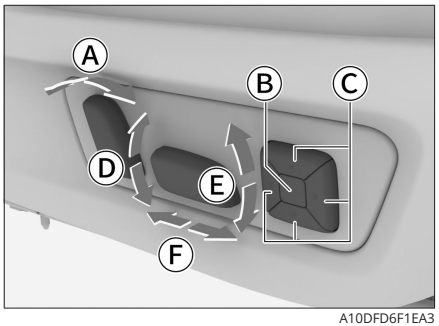
WARNING

Do not drive without the headrest. Otherwise, if there is a collision, your neck will be greatly impacted, resulting in serious injuries and even death.

Power seat

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the seat during driving.
- Make sure that the driver's seat is adjusted to the correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations, accidents or ineffective use of the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively to prevent the passenger from sliding out from the lap belt when a collision happens. The seat belt provides maximum protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.



A10DFD6F1EA3

Ⓐ Backrest tilt adjustment

Ⓑ Seat massage function

Press the button to make the massage function switch between strong, weak and off.

The massage function will stop automatically after it operates for 15 minutes.

Ⓒ Lumbar support adjustment

Press the forward or backward button to reinforce or weaken the lumbar support.

Press the upward or downward button to raise or lower the lumbar support.

Ⓓ Seat height adjustment

Ⓔ Seat cushion angle adjustment

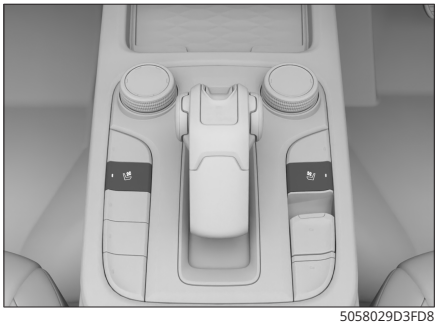
Ⓕ Seat forward/backward adjustment

NOTICE

Some functions are only available for the driver's seat.

Front seats ventilation

Setting via buttons



5058029D3FD8

When the power supply is set to ON mode, press the seat ventilation button on the left or right side to set the ventilation function for the corresponding seat. The indicator light on the button goes on to indicate that the corresponding function is activated, and goes out to indicate that the corresponding function is deactivated.

Setting via the display screen

Touch the seat icon at the bottom to set the corresponding seat ventilation function on the A/C interface of the multimedia display screen.

Driver's seat memory/ welcome

You can set the functions related to the driver's seat through the 【Car】 → 【In-vehicle】 → 【Driver】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

› 【Driver's seat memory/mirrors memory】: you can set it to manual or auto.

【Manual】: touch any memory button for a long time to store the current position of the driver's seat, with a prompt that the position is saved successfully. Touch any memory button to recall positions of the driver's seat and the rearview mirrors stored by the button.

【Auto】: when this function is activated, the position of the driver's seat will automatically store in the currently logged-in account. After logging into your account next time, the driver's seat and rearview mirrors will automatically adjust to the last used position.

NOTICE

When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 km/h, the driver's seat memory/ mirrors memory function on the multimedia display screen will not be operated and used to avoid distracting the driver and hindering safe driving.

› 【Driver's seat welcome】: with the function activated and the power supply switched from ON to OFF mode, the driver's seat automatically moves to a position that makes it easier to get on and off the vehicle. With the power supply switched from OFF to ON mode, the driver's seat returns to its previous position.

NOTICE

› During the automatic movement and return of the driver's seat, if the driver's seat adjustment switch is operated, the driver's seat will execute the command of the adjustment switch.

› After the driver's seat wheel automatically moves to a position that makes it easier to get on and off, the welcome function will not return to the position used last time if the adjustment is made to the driver's seat position.

Rear seat adjustment

Seat cushion flipping

NOTICE

- Remove all items from the seat before flipping the seat cushion.
- Adjust the front seats to a suitable position to avoid interference when flipping the seat cushion.



5EE1174F34E2

Pull up the seat cushion cord, pull the seat cushion forward and upward from under the backrest, and then flip the seat cushion forward.

WARNING

- Never flip the seat cushion while the vehicle is in motion.
- When driving, no one is allowed to sit on a flipped seat cushion.

Backrest folding

CAUTION

When the seat cushion is not flipped forward, the backrest cannot be placed flat on the seat cushion. Do not apply excessive force, as this may damage the seat.

NOTICE

- Flip the seat cushion first and then fold the backrest flat to obtain more storage space.

  When flattening the backrest, please push the seat cushion forward slightly so that the backrest can be flattened smoothly.
- Before folding, adjust the headrest to its lowest position.
- Put the seat belt back in place to avoid interference when folding the backrest.
- Remove all objects from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- Do not place heavy objects on the folded backrest.



88E5D104D84F

Ⓐ Unlocking handle

Ⓑ Backrest lock indicator

When the backrest is locked, the indicator is in the retracted state (as shown in the figure); after the backrest is unlocked, the indicator is in the pop-up state.

Pull the unlocking handle at the top of the backrest forward to fold the unlocked backrest forward.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust or fold the seat backrest while the vehicle is running.
- No one is allowed to sit on a folded seat backrest or in the luggage area.
- Children are prohibited from entering the luggage area.

Seat recovery

1. Adjust the seat belt to avoid it being stuck under the seat during backrest recovery.
2. Pull the backrest upright and return it to its original position. Check that the backrest lock indicator is locked (retracted). Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to confirm that it is locked in place.
3. Adjust the seat belt lock body to the vertical state to prevent the lock body from pressing down after the seat cushion is restored, and then restore the seat cushion to the use state.

Backrest angle adjustment

Backrest angle can be adjusted. Pull the unlocking handle at the top of the backrest forward to adjust the unlocked backrest to the desired angle.

After adjusting the backrest angle, check that the backrest lock indicator is locked (retracted). Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to confirm that it is locked in place.

Rear armrests



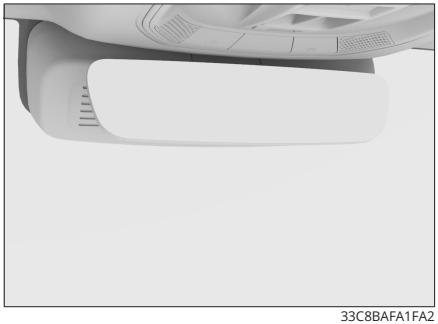
0EDA20659E89

Pull the rope outwards to lower the rear armrests to provide elbow support for the rear passengers and make the arms feel more comfortable.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

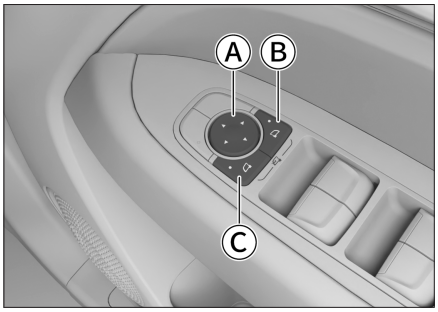
Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror



33C8BAFA1FA2

The interior rearview mirror will automatically reduce the reflection according to the light intensity of the headlights of the vehicle behind.

Side mirrors



77D2473F8E38

Ⓐ Mirror adjustment button

Ⓑ Right side mirror selection button

Ⓒ Left side mirror selection button

Mirror adjustment

1. Press the side mirror selection button to select the left (L) or right (R) side mirror. If the button indicator light comes on, the mirror has entered the selected state.
2. Press the front, rear, left and right positions of mirror adjustment button to adjust the angle of the left or right side mirror.
3. After the adjustment, press the side mirror selection button again, the button indicator light will go out and the mirror exits the selected state.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Otherwise, errors in control can lead to accidents and serious injury or death.

Electric folding

Press the left and right side mirror selection buttons simultaneously, and the side mirrors will automatically fold up. Press them again simultaneously and the side mirrors will automatically unfold.

CAUTION

For electric folding side mirrors, do not fold them manually. Otherwise, the internal structure of the side mirrors may be damaged.

WARNING

- Before driving, you must unfold the side mirrors and adjust them appropriately.
- Be careful of your fingers when moving the side mirrors to avoid injury or damage to the side mirror.

Side mirrors settings

You can make the side mirrors settings through the 【Car】 → 【Outside vehicle】 → 【Mirrors】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Side mirror folding

The side mirrors in automatic folding mode allow to link its folding and deploying to the locking and unlocking of the doors.

Side mirrors auto adjustment for reversing

You can choose to disable it or set it to the driver, front passenger or both sides. After the function is activated, the side mirrors can automatically adjust to the stored position suitable for reversing by engaging the R gear position; the side mirrors can automatically restore to the position before reversing by disengaging the R gear position.

Saving the position of side mirror auto adjustment for reversing

1. As needed, turn on the side mirror reversing mode on the driver, the front passenger or both sides.
2. Engage in the R gear position and adjust the mirror angle of the corresponding side mirror to make it more suitable for the vision when reversing.
3. After the adjustment is completed, exit the R gear to complete the storage.

Side mirrors memory

You can set the memory function of the side mirrors through the 【Car】 → 【In-vehicle】 → 【Driver】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

The operation method is the same as for the driver's seat memory. For details, please refer to "Driver's seat memory". (▷ Page 44)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Adjustment method



D8F479E1EB73

1. Release the adjustment lever beneath the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to align it to your chest and make sure you can see all the instrument panel and indicator lights on the instrument panel.
3. After adjusting, secure the adjustment lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

⚠ WARNING

› Never adjust the steering wheel during vehicle running. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by control errors.

› Ensure that the steering wheel is locked firmly in place after adjusting it. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by sudden movement of the steering wheel.

Horn

Press the horn mark on the steering wheel or its surrounding area and the horn honks.

⚠ CAUTION

› There is a front airbag inside the steering wheel. Do not hit the position around the horn hard to avoid the condition that the airbag cannot work normally during accident or the airbag is accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.

› Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Roof rack

To install a luggage rack on the roof rack, please read carefully the installation manual that comes with the luggage rack.

NOTICE

When the luggage rack is installed or used for carrying items, relevant requirements of local traffic regulations should be observed.

Roof rack bearing capacity

The maximum load weight of the roof rack is 50 kg; the maximum load weight of the roof rack is 35 kg when the vehicle is decelerating rapidly.

NOTICE

The load weight of the roof rack includes accessories such as the beam and other accessories.

WARNING

- Items on the roof luggage rack must be secured firmly in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.
- Loading goods on the roof luggage rack will raise the vehicle centre of gravity. Avoid high speed driving, sudden startup, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle due to incorrect operation of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.
- When rather heavy or large objects are loaded on the roof luggage rack, changes in the vehicle centre of mass and wind resistance may affect its driving performance, and there is a risk of an accident. Therefore, you must adjust your driving style and speed according to the specific circumstances.
- Drive at a low speed in lateral wind. The vehicle profile and its high centre of gravity make it more sensitive to lateral gust, and reducing the vehicle speed will make it easier to control.
- Do not overspeed, jolt, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. when driving off-road or in uneven terrain. This can cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death, as well as serious damage to the suspension and chassis of the vehicle.

- Do not cross steep slopes, and it is better to drive straight up or down. The vehicle is more likely to roll over than to roll forward or backward.
- The roof luggage rack can only be used with the sunroof closed. Otherwise, the roof luggage rack or the items loaded on it may cause injury to passengers.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Light settings

You can make the light settings through the 【Car】→【Lights】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Personalization

› 【Active welcome light】: with the power supply mode OFF and the main light switch in the AUTO mode, when the ambient brightness reaches the condition to turn on the vehicle lights, unlock the doors from the outside of the vehicle (except for unlocking the doors with the mechanical key), and the vehicle exterior lights will turn on.

› 【Power-saving delay】: you can set the time delay for the power-saving function to take effect.

After the power supply is switched to the OFF mode, if the power supply mode and the door lock state do not change within the set time, the power saving function will automatically activate to save power.

› 【Ceiling light delay】: with the reading light and ceiling light door control function activated, the reading lights and the ceiling light will automatically turn off after being on for a certain period of time (set time) when the vehicle is unlocked or when the power supply is switched to the OFF mode and all doors are closed.

› 【Follow home delay】: you can set it to off or set the lighting time of the lights after this function is triggered.

With the power supply mode OFF mode and the main light switch in AUTO mode, when the ambient brightness reaches the condition to turn on the vehicle light, the driver door is opened and the vehicle exterior light will turn on for a period of time so that you can leave the vehicle in dark conditions.

› 【Find vehicle mode reminder】: you can set the vehicle prompt status when the find vehicle function is activated.

› 【Hazard light on with emergency brake】: when the vehicle is driving at a speed of more than 50km/h, the emergency flashers will flash to warn the vehicle behind to prevent rear-end collision if the brake is applied urgently at that time.

Ambient lights

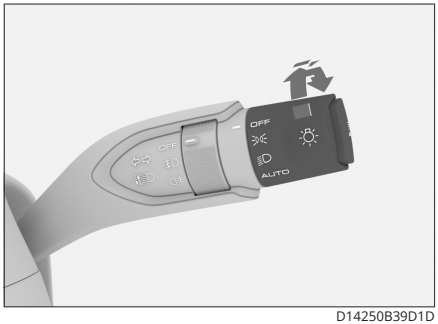
You can set the interior ambient lights on/off, brightness, colour, etc.

Light control combination switch

Main light switch

NOTICE

Do not use the exterior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, a drained battery may be caused, affecting the normal start of the vehicle.



D14250B39D1D

› Turn the main light switch to the side light position to turn on the position lights and license plate lights.

CAUTION

Do not use the position lights instead of the low beam headlights while driving. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.

The position lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead. Therefore, turn on the low beam headlights when it is dark or visibility is poor.

› Turn the main light switch to the low beam headlight position to turn on the low beam headlights and keep the position lights and license plate lights on.

› Turn the main light switch to the AUTO position. The side lights and low beam headlights will turn on or off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.

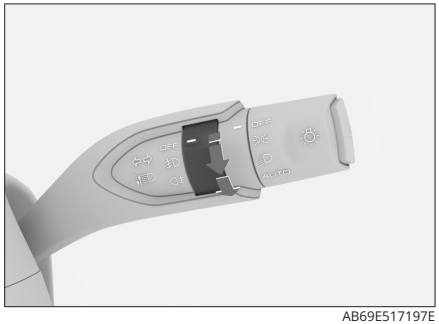
CAUTION

› During the day, if heavy fog reduces visibility, the lights may not automatically turn on. Turn on the lights manually in this case.

› Auto light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.

› Turn the main light switch to the OFF position to turn off all vehicle lights.

Fog light knob

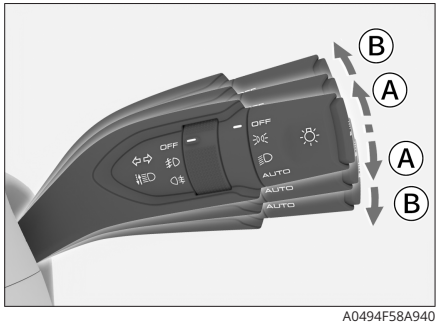


AB69E517197E

› When the side lights (position lights, license plate lights) turn on, turn the fog light knob to the front fog light position to turn on the front fog lights.

› When the low beam headlights or the front fog lights turn on, turn the fog light knob to the rear fog light position repeatedly to turn on or off the rear fog lights. Once released, the knob will automatically return.

Turn and lane change signals



A0494F58A940

Ⓐ Lane change signal

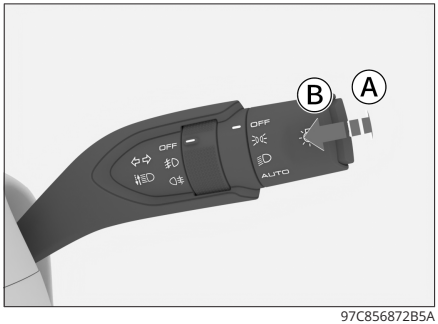
Ⓑ Turn signal

› Lane change signal: slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and release it. Then, the combination switch will automatically return to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal lights will flash 3 times.

› Steering signal (type Ⅰ): pull up or push down the light control combination switch and release it. The switch will not automatically return. At this time, the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously. The switch will return to its original position automatically after the vehicle has completed the turn.

Steering signal (type Ⅱ): pull up or push down the light control combination switch and release it. The switch will automatically return. At this time, the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously and turn off automatically after the steering is completed. Slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards to manually turn off the turn signal light.

Manual low-high beam



97C856872B5A

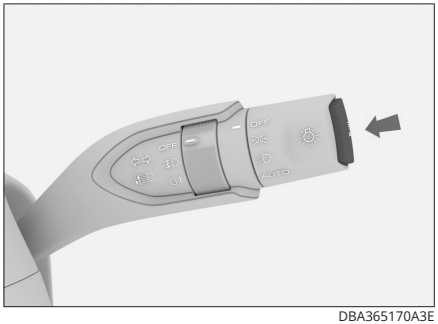
Ⓐ High beam headlights on

Ⓑ High beam headlights flashing

› When the low beam headlights are on, press the light control combination switch away from the steering wheel to turn on or off the high beam headlights. The switch will automatically return to its original position when you release it.

› Pull the light control combination switch upwards in the direction of the steering wheel to turn on the high beam headlights. When released, the switch will automatically return to its original position, and the high beam headlights will turn off. Repeat this operation to make the high beam headlights flash.

Auto low-high beam



DBA365170A3E

The auto low-high beam function allows the vehicle headlights to automatically switch between high and low beams based on the current speed and ambient light conditions.

When the low beam headlights are on and the high beam headlights are off, press the auto low-high beam switch AUTO to activate or deactivate the auto low-high beam function. After the function is activated, the auto high beam indicator light AUTO on the instrument panel turns on in green.

⚠ WARNING

The auto low-high beam function is only an auxiliary function. The driver should manually switch between high and low beam headlights according to the light and visibility conditions if necessary in traffic or weather conditions. Manual intervention is required in the following cases:

- Weather conditions are not conducive to driving, such as heavy fog, rain or snow.
- Turn sharply or drive on a slope.
- Drive at a junction or when you cannot fully see oncoming vehicles, such as when the lights of oncoming vehicles are blocked by crash barriers or when driving on a highway.
- Drive in areas with poor lighting conditions and many buildings.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting around the road, such as pedestrians or non-motorized vehicles.
- There are highly reflective objects near the road, such as traffic signs.
- The rain light sensor on the current windscreen is dirty, frosted or covered by labels.

Daytime running light

To allow other drivers to see your vehicle more clearly, the daytime running lights automatically turn on when the vehicle is started and the P gear position is exited.

The daytime running lights will turn off in the following conditions:

- The headlights are on.
- The P gear position is engaged.
- When the left or right indicator is on, the daytime running light on the corresponding side will go out.

⚠ WARNING

- The daytime running lights are not designed for the needs of night-time driving.
- The driver is always obliged to ensure that the vehicle is travelling with the correct lights in compliance with traffic laws.

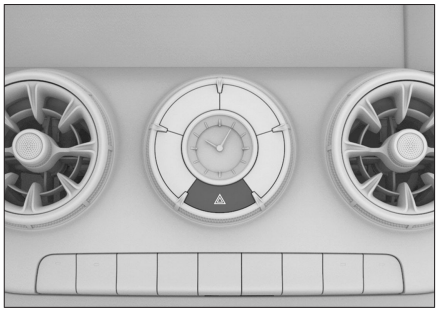
Front fog lights auxiliary lighting

This feature enables the corresponding front fog light on one side of the vehicle to automatically illuminate during turning, and all front fog lights to automatically illuminate during reversing, in order to better illuminate the surrounding environment.

The following conditions must be met in order to activate the front fog lights auxiliary lighting:

- The vehicle is travelling at a speed below 35 km/h .
- The low beam headlights are turned on.
- The turn signal lights are turned on or the angle of steering wheel is greater than 60°.
- The front fog lights are not turned on.

Emergency flasher

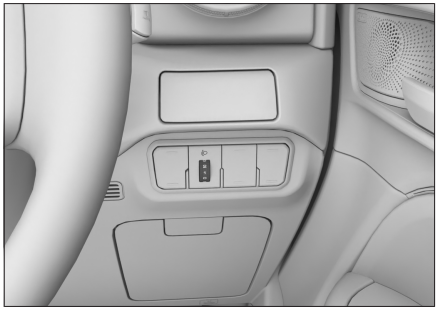


3D76DC44C3FB

In the event of vehicle breakdown or traffic accident, you shall turn on the emergency flashers to remind other vehicles.

Press the switch to turn on or turn off the emergency flashers.

Headlight height adjustment knob



1630B4852412

The headlight beam height is adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.

› Turn the knob upwards to raise the height of the headlight beam.

› Turn the knob downwards to lower the height of the headlight beam.

Instrument brightness adjustment



FDA6F1B132F9

› Press the upper part of the button, and the instrument and the vehicle backlights are brightened.

› Press the lower part of the button and the instrument and the vehicle backlights are dimmed.

Interior lights

CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, the drained battery may be caused.

Reading light



62BFEC4C6806

› Press the main reading light switch to turn on or off the reading lights.

› Press the door control switch to activate or deactivate the door control function.

With the door control function enabled, the reading lights will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door state.

Ceiling lights



A38991EAA621

› Press the door control switch to activate or deactivate the door control function.

With the door control function enabled, the ceiling light will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door state.

› Press the ceiling light switch to turn on or off the ceiling lights.

Luggage area lights

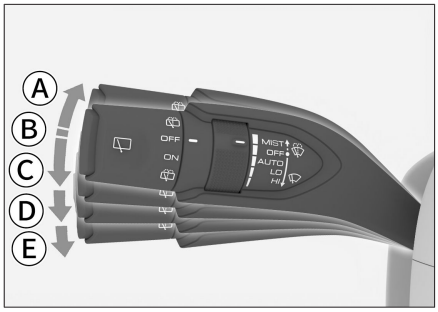
When the tailgate is opened or closed, the luggage area lights automatically turn on or off.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Front wiper

Front wiper position



A9FC138F7830

Ⓐ Front wiper mist operation (MIST)

Move the wiper control combination switch upwards to the MIST position. Once you release it, it will return to its original position. The front wiper will operate once.

Ⓑ Front wiper off (OFF)

Ⓒ Automatic wipe (AUTO)

Ⓓ Low speed wipe (LO)

Ⓔ High speed wipe (HI)

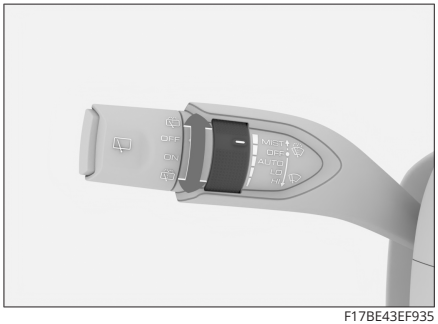
⚠ CAUTION

› If the surface of the windscreen is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object. Otherwise, the wiper blade or the internal structure of the wiper may be damaged.

› Prior to using the wiper in the cold season, make sure to check if the wiper blade is frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blade has been frozen on the windscreen, you shall use it after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blade and wiper motor may be damaged.

› If the wiper stops working due to accumulated snow or other reasons, turn off the wiper and park the vehicle in a safe spot. Then remove the debris like accumulated snow so that the wiper may continue to work normally.

Adjustment of auto wipe frequency



F17BE43EF935

Wiper control

Turning the adjustment knob can change the sensitivity of the rainfall and light sensor to the rain, thereby changing the wipe frequency of the front wiper when it is at the auto wipe position.

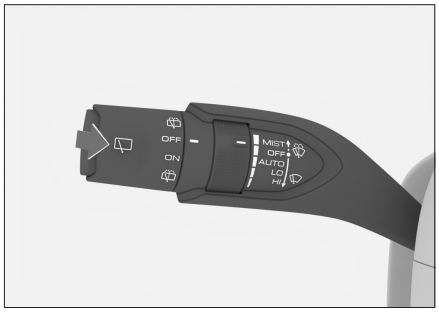
WARNING

- The rainfall and light sensor may not fully recognize each fall of rain and activate the front wiper. If rain on the windscreen affects the vision, you shall manually adjust the front wiper position or wipe frequency duly as required.
- When the automatic front wiper is in the AUTO position, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly if the windscreen near the rearview mirror is touched from outside or the windscreen is vibrated. Be careful not to get your fingers and other parts of your body caught in the front wiper.
- Do not place the automatic front wiper in the AUTO position when you wash the car or no front wiper is required to be used. Otherwise, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly.

CAUTION

- If the surface of the windscreen near the rearview mirror is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object, otherwise it may affect the normal work of the automatic wiper.
- Sometimes, even if snowflakes come in contact with the rainfall and light sensor, the sensor may not operate normally and the front wipers may not function, as snowflakes come in different shapes. The snow melted may cause the front wiper to automatically operate.

Washing function



EBB6022B57B3

Pull up and hold the wiper control combination switch towards the steering wheel, and the front wipers will use windscreen washer fluid to wipe the front windscreen. When it is released, the combination switch will return automatically to its original position.

CAUTION

› Avoid prolonged use of the washer. Otherwise, the washing motor may be damaged.

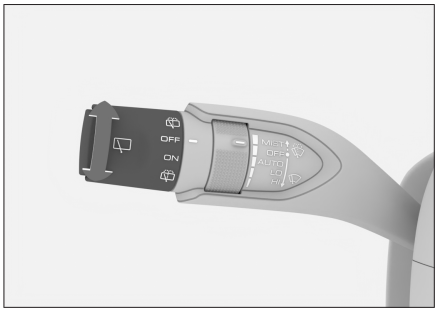
To protect the washing motor, the washer may automatically shut down after a period of continuous operation.

› When the washer fluid is insufficient, replenish it. In the cold season, add appropriate washer fluid to ensure that it will not freeze. Otherwise, not only the washing function will not be available, but also the related parts will be frozen.

› Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (eg.: cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wiper.

› Do not let the wiper blade come into contact with products such as oil-based cleaning agents, otherwise a chemical reaction will occur, resulting in serious deformation of the wiper blade.

Rear wiper



9CEC152D6274

› Turn the rear wiper control knob to the ON position, and the rear wiper will be turned on.

› Turn and hold the rear wiper control knob to the rear windscreen cleaning position. The rear wiper will wipe the rear windscreen by using the windscreen washer fluid. Release the control knob and it will return automatically to its original position.

› Turn the rear wiper control knob to the OFF position, and the rear wiper will be turned off.

CAUTION

› Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wipers.

› The blades should not come into contact with oily cleaning agents, as they may react chemically and cause deformation.

Front wiper intelligent speed downshift function

If the front wiper is in the high-speed wiping position, when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 km/h and then decelerates to below 4 km/h, the front wiper will automatically reduce the frequency of wiping; when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 km/h, the wiper will automatically return to the wiper frequency of the current position.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Air conditioning control panel



46DDCF1B9488

› Press the button ON/OFF to turn on or off the air conditioning system. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the A/C has been turned on.

› Press A/C button to activate or deactivate the cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the cooling mode is activated. In this mode, the inside temperature and humidity may be reduced.

› Press the airflow decrease button to decrease the airflow.

Press the airflow increase button to increase the airflow.

› Press the MODE button to switch the airflow distribution mode.

› Press the down button ∨ to lower the temperature.

Press the up button ∧ to raise the temperature.

› Press the internal circulation button to turn on or off the internal circulation mode. The corresponding indicator light is on, indicating that the internal circulation mode has been turned on. The button indicator light goes out, indicating that the external circulation mode is turned on.

NOTICE

› In general, the external circulation mode should be used. Especially with the compressor switched off, using internal recirculation mode can easily lead to the windows misting.

› The internal circulation mode should be used under such circumstances as the tunnel, traffic jam, dirty air outside the vehicle or quick cooling and heating desired.

› Press the AUTO button to activate the automatic mode. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the automatic mode is activated. In this mode, the airflow distribution mode and the airflow of the air conditioning system can be automatically adjusted to reach the set temperature.

NOTICE

If the airflow distribution mode and the airflow automatically adjusted by the A/C system cannot meet your demand, you can perform manual adjustment; in this case, the system will exit from the AUTO mode, and the indicator light will go out.

› Press the front defroster button to turn on or off the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the front defroster function has been enabled. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.

› Press the rear defroster button to activate or deactivate the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the rear defroster function has been enabled. In this case, the frosting of the rear windscreen can be gradually eliminated.

WARNING

Once the rear defroster function is on, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to avoid battery loss.

A/C settings interface

You can set the working state of the A/C through the A/C setting interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

› The A/C setting interface may vary depending on the vehicle models. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

› The A/C system consumes the traction battery SOC when it is in operation, and its use will reduce the range.

› Under extreme operating conditions (high or low ambient temperatures, long-time slope climbing, etc.), the A/C may be limited in power or even stop working to ensure the vehicle's power performance.

› Touch the switch button to turn on or off the A/C. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the A/C is activated.

› Touch the 【AUTO】 button to activate the automatic mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the automatic mode is activated. In this mode, the airflow distribution mode and airflow will automatically adjust to reach the set temperature.

NOTICE

If the automatic adjustment function of the A/C cannot meet your needs, perform the manual adjustment. In this case, the automatic mode will be exited, and the indicator light will turn off.

› Touch the 【A/C】 button to activate or deactivate the cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the cooling mode is activated. In this mode, the interior temperature and humidity may be reduced.

› Touch the face-blowing mode button, the feet and face-blowing mode button, the feet-blowing mode button, or the feet-blowing and defroster mode button to select the corresponding airflow distribution mode.

› Touch the temperature value or slide up and down the A/C temperature display area to adjust the temperature.

› Touch the 【SYNC】 button to activate or deactivate the zone control mode.

After activating the zone control mode, you can adjust the temperature on the driver side and the front passenger side independently.

After deactivating the zone control mode, the temperature on the front passenger side will synchronize with that on the driver side.

NOTICE

When adjusting the temperature on the front passenger side, the A/C system will automatically enable the zone control mode.

› Touch the front defroster button to activate or deactivate the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the front defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting and fogging on the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.

› Touch the rear defroster button to activate or deactivate the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the rear defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting on the rear windscreen can be gradually eliminated.

The rear defroster function will be automatically deactivated after a period of time, and the corresponding indicator light will turn off.

⚠ WARNING

Once the rear defroster function is activated, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for an extended period to prevent draining the battery.

› Touch the ion purification button to activate or deactivate the ion purification function. Once the function is activated, the ions generated by the A/C system will circulate with the air inside the vehicle, effectively purifying the air and improving comfort.

i NOTICE

› Do not close the face-blowing outlets after activating the ion purification mode. Otherwise, ions will not enter the vehicle, and the air purification effect cannot be achieved.

› Check and replace the A/C filter regularly to maintain optimal air purification inside the vehicle.

› Touch the fan speed decrease button or fan speed increase button to adjust the fan speed.

Touch or slide on the area between the fan speed decrease button and the fan speed increase button to adjust the fan speed.

› Touch the AQS button to activate or deactivate the AQS (automatic air quality control) function. After the function is activated, the A/C system will automatically detect the air quality and switch between recirculation and fresh air modes.

› Touch the recirculation button or the fresh air button to switch between the recirculation mode and the fresh air mode.

When the recirculation indicator light turns on, it indicates that the recirculation mode is activated.

When the fresh air indicator light turns on, it indicates that the fresh air mode is activated, allowing outside air to enter the vehicle.

i NOTICE

› Normally, the fresh air mode should be used. Using the recirculation mode can cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.

› The recirculation mode should be used when the vehicle is in a tunnel, in traffic congestion, when the outside air is polluted, or when quick cooling or heating is needed.

› Touch the more settings button ••• to show the more settings interface.

【Turn on AC quickly】: you can activate or deactivate this function. After this function is activated, the A/C will automatically turn on when the A/C panel is active.

A/C control

Cooling/heating

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the 【AUTO】 mode and the corresponding indicator light will turn on. At this moment, the 【A/C】 indicator light will come on, and the compressor will be automatically turned on or off depending on the temperature and the environment.
2. Set the temperature to your desired value. The A/C system will automatically adjust the air distribution mode and the airflow to achieve the set temperature.
3. Selecting the internal circulation mode may speed up cooling or heating and help to improve the economy of the vehicle.

Front defroster/front defogger

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the front defroster mode, and the corresponding indicator light will turn on.
2. You can also adjust the airflow or the temperature, turn on or off the compressor, or switch between the internal and external circulation modes on demand.

NOTICE

If the air is dirty or fog is formed inside the car, switch to external circulation mode.

CAUTION

- Check the radiator and the A/C condenser on a regular basis. Use a low-pressure water gun or a soft brush to remove the leaves, insects and dust from their front surfaces. Otherwise, these objects will block the air flow, thereby reducing the cooling effect.
- Running the A/C regularly keeps the compressor and seals well lubricated and prevents leakage. Therefore, even in the cold season when air conditioning is not required, it is necessary to run the air conditioning at least once a week for more than 10 minutes each time.
- If the A/C system does not cool as well as before, head to the authorised service centre for maintenance.
- Direct discharge of refrigerant into the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and the refrigerant should be recovered by trained and certified technicians using appropriate containers.

NOTICE

About the air conditioning odour

› **Source of the odour**

Internal and external air exchange should be carried out for A/C as its long-term use may gather dirt which will go mouldy after a long time, resulting in odour.

The A/C filter will accumulate water vapour, dust, etc. after use for a long time, resulting in odour.

› **Recommended measures**

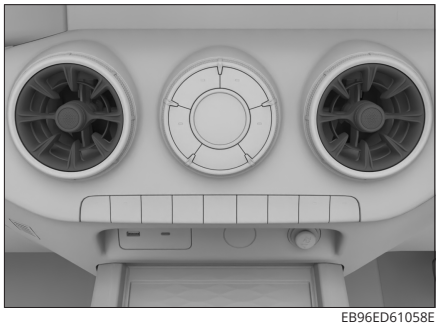
When the outside air is fresh, use the external circulation mode so that the air in the vehicle may maintain the good ventilation.

When the vehicle is in cooling mode, you are recommended to turn off the 【A/C】 switch first and let the blower continue running for about 1 to 2 minutes before turning off the air conditioning system. This will dry off the air conditioning evaporator and the air conditioning system to prevent mould growth and odours.

When you feel the odour is very strong, you are recommended to head to the authorised service centre for check. Clean or replace the air conditioning filter element, if necessary.

A/C outlet

Front outlets



EB96ED61058E

Rotate the toggle switch in the middle of the outlet to open or close the air outlet.

Move the toggle switch in the middle of the outlet to adjust the direction of the air flow.

Rear outlets

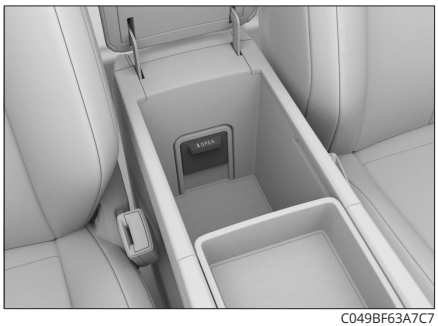


126837FD4E40

Move the toggle switch in the middle of the outlet to adjust the direction of the air flow.

Move the toggle switch as indicated by the left-to-close marking ⊠ ⇦ or right-to-close marking ⇨ ⊠ to close the outlets.

Storage case outlet



C049BF63A7C7

Pressing down on the ventilation valve in the storage case will open it; pulling it up will close it.

After the valve is opened, when the A/C system is in face-blowing mode or feet and face-blowing mode, the air from the A/C system can be introduced into the storage case.

NOTICE

The ventilation temperature in the storage case is affected by the working state of the A/C system.

- Only when the A/C system is in face-blowing or feet-blowing mode, the air flow of the A/C system can be introduced into the storage case. Therefore, cold air is generally introduced into the storage case.
- When the A/C system is used for heating, if it is manually switched to the face-blowing or the feet and face-blowing mode, hot air is introduced into the storage case at this time.

Mobile phone wireless charging

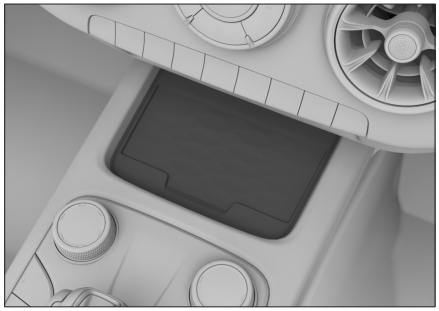
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instructions

You can activate or deactivate the wireless charging function of the mobile phone through the 【Car】→【In-vehicle】→【Wireless Charging】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

After activating the wireless charging function of the mobile phone, make sure that the doors are closed. Set the power supply mode to ON or start the vehicle. Then, the mobile phone placed in the charging area can be charged.



A588ACB4EDD5

NOTICE

To achieve a better charging effect, ensure that the charging coil of the mobile phone is facing downwards.

NOTICE

- This function is not applicable to all mobile phones, but only to mobile phones that have passed the "Qi" official standard certification and can be normally placed in the charging area.
- Only one mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- On bumpy roads, intermittent stopping and resuming of wireless charging may occur. If the mobile phone deviates from the charging area and the charging stops, move the mobile phone back to the chargeable area.
- It is normal that wireless charging devices and mobile phones will get hot during charging.

  When the temperature is too high, the system will stop charging, and will continue charging after the temperature drops.
- If the mobile phone is faulty, this may also cause it to fail to be charged. Use other mobile phones that meet the requirements for wireless charging detection to confirm whether the mobile phone is faulty.

- If the mobile phone is equipped with a protective cover or an accessory that does not support wireless charging, take out it first; otherwise, the mobile phone cannot be charged normally.
- The actual charging power may vary or decrease due to factors such as the mobile phone brand, model, and current battery level. For mobile phones with a small inductive coil, use the brand-specific wireless charger for high-power charging, as using the on-board wireless charging module may result in reduced power.
- Due to the position of the charging coil, foldable phones need to align their coils with the vehicle wireless charging coil for proper charging. If not aligned correctly, it may lead to slow charging or no charging at all.
- To prevent draining the battery voltage, do not use the wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not started.

⚠ WARNING

- For the sake of safety, drivers should not perform charging related operations during driving.
- Do not place coins, keys, chip cards and other metal objects in the charging area. Otherwise, metal objects may be heated, which could cause abnormal charging or safety accidents.

  If metal foreign objects are found in the charging area during charging, do not remove them by hand to avoid scalding your fingers. Deactivate the wireless charging function immediately, and wait a few minutes before removing foreign objects.
- To use the charging area as a storage case, deactivate the wireless charging function.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not spray any liquid in the charging area to prevent it from seeping into the wireless charging system through the clearance of the rubber pad, which could cause system failure.
- Do not modify the wireless charging system to avoid damage to the vehicle or accidents.

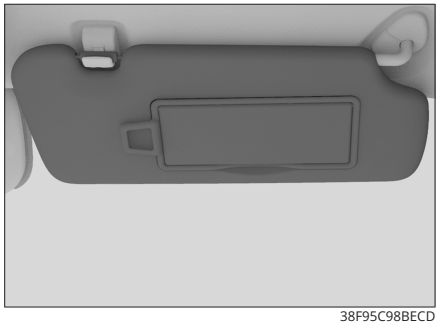
ℹ NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Sun visor



38F95C98BECD

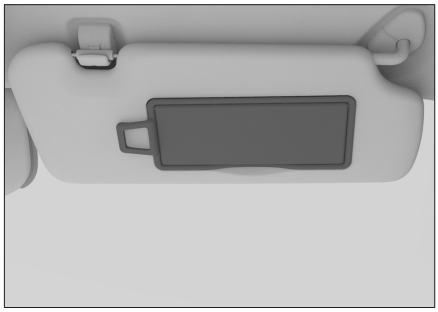
To block sunlight from the front, flip down the sun visor.



EE7A67445D9C

To block sunlight from the side, flip down the sun visor, unhook it and push it to the side.

Vanity mirror



51777FC8915A

Open the cover to use the vanity mirror set inside the sun visor.

Close the cover when not using the vanity mirror.

Storage devices

Storage box



49A92FDAFA7F

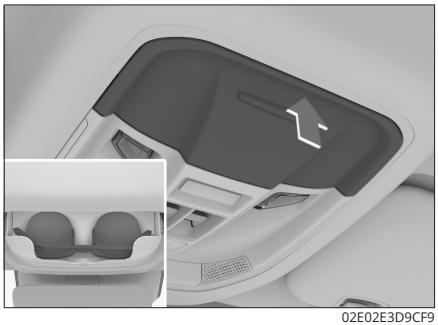
Press the open button of the storage box to open it automatically.

Flip the storage box up until it is locked in place to close it.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the storage box is closed when driving. Otherwise, the items may be thrown out from the storage box and lead to an injury in the case of an accident or emergency braking.

Spectacle case



02E02E3D9CF9

Press the spectacle case to open it.

When placing glasses, fold the two mirror legs normally, with the lens facing forward and the mirror leg facing upward. Otherwise, the glasses may fall off when opening the glasses case.

⚠ WARNING

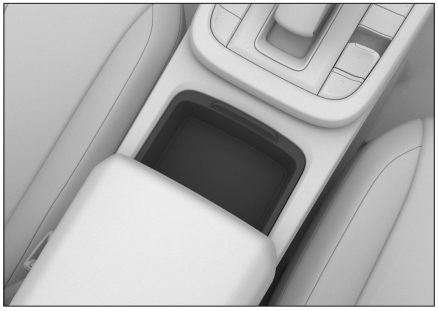
Make sure the spectacle case has been closed when driving.

ℹ NOTICE

Certain oversized sunglasses models may not fit into this case.

Storage cases

Located in front of the front armrest



3277AF28615F

The storage case can be slid back and forth for a certain distance. Slide it backwards to see the front cup holder at the bottom.

Located in the middle of the front seat



61EA21A8069C

To use the storage case, just flip up the front seat armrest.

The storage case space is connected with the air conditioner and has the function of ventilation.(▷ Page 68)

Located near the steering wheel



9C444697AB15

To use the storage case, press it and release, and the storage case will automatically pop open.

This storage case is suitable for placing small items such as high-speed toll cards, bank cards, change, keys, etc. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

When the storage case is not in use, press the storage case to return it to its position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pop cigarette ash into the storage case. The storage case is made of plastic, and the high temperature of cigarette ash will damage the storage case and even cause a fire.

Located on the lower right part of the instrument panel



499BF6791D97

To use the storage case, press the switch, and the storage case will automatically open.

This storage case is suitable for placing items such as driver's license and vehicle licence. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

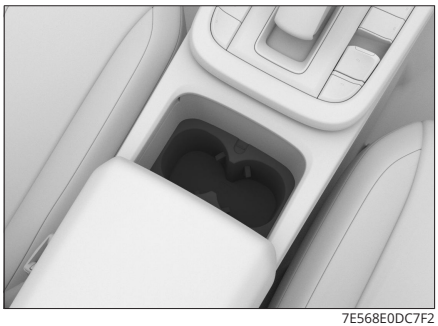
When the storage case is not in use, flip up the storage case until it is locked in place to close the storage case.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pour water or other liquids into the storage case. Because the fuse box is located at the rear of the storage case, moisture infiltration will affect the use of the fuse.

Front cup holder

Slide the storage case backwards to see the front cup holder.

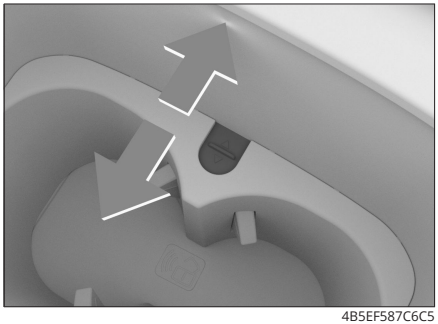


7E568E0DC7F2

CAUTION

- Don't place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over.
- Make sure that the lid of the beverage can is covered to avoid spilling liquid.

Front cup holder removal and installation



4B5EF587C6C5

Turn the cup holder fixing switch backward to make the switch detach from the storage case wall and take out the cup holder upward.

Place the cup holder in place along the storage case wall, and turn the cup holder fixing switch forward to secure the cup holder.

Rear cup holder



4F3CB3866BC8

Tilt the rear seat armrest to the lowest position to use the rear cup holder.

WARNING

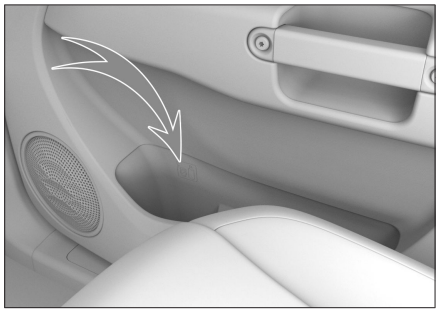
- When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.
- Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder.

  Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, thus causing an accident or personal injury.

  Ensure that beverage cans are intact and their lids are securely closed. Failure to properly seal containers may result in liquid spills, potentially causing damage to vehicle electronics, staining interiors, or creating safety hazards.

› If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in case of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Bottle holders



1A22FAD0AB54

There is a bottle holder at the inside of each door, which is used only for placing the sealed bottle container.

⚠ WARNING

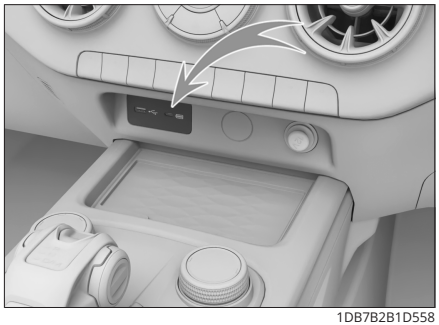
Do not place anything other than bottles inside the bottle holder. Otherwise, such items may be dislodged from the bottle holder and lead to personal injuries in the case of accident or emergency braking.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the lid of the bottle is closed to avoid spilling liquid.

Power supply socket

USB Type-C power supply socket



1DB7B2B1D558

Located in front of the auxiliary instrument panel

Just use it when the power supply is set to the ON mode.

This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

USB Type-A power supply socket



2305F0EF8CC4

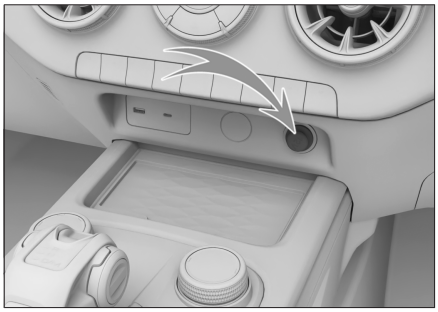
Located beside the rear A/C outlet

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to the ON mode.

This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

Standby power supply

Located in front of the auxiliary instrument panel

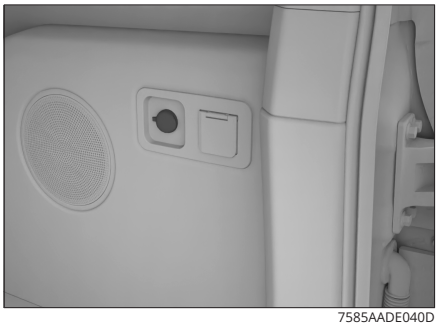


6C8502103E29

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to the ON mode.

This power supply can provide a 12 V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

Located on the right trim plate of the luggage area



7585AADE040D

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to the ON mode.

This power supply can provide a 12 V DC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

220 V power supply



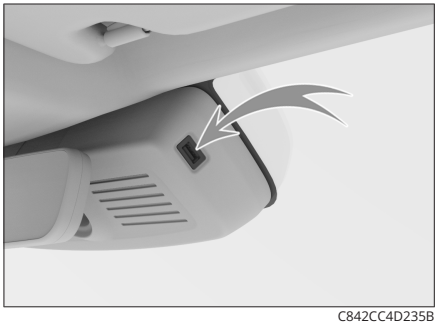
16AD139DAB59

Located on the right trim plate of the luggage area

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to the ON mode.

This power supply can provide a 220 V AC power for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W.

Driving recorder power supply



C842CC4D235B

The driving recorder power supply is located near the interior rearview mirror, as shown in the figure.

The power supply can be used when it is set to the ON mode.

Interior equipment

This power supply is designed to provide a 5 V DC power for driving recorders with rated power less than or equal to 10 W.

⚠ WARNING

For driving safety, be careful not to block the line of sight to prevent danger when installing a driving recorder.

⚠ WARNING

Flammable gases and heaters must be kept away from the power supply socket.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow liquids such as beverages or foreign objects to enter the power supply socket. Otherwise, the faults like short circuits may be caused. If the power supply socket has a cover, close the cover when it is not in use.
- If you use an accessory that exceeds the rated power, the vehicle fuse may be burnt out.
- Do not connect the precision equipment, highly sensitive equipment or other important equipment to this power supply socket.
- Do not use this power supply in humid and high-temperature environments.
- Don't use it in parallel or in series with any other power supply.
- If you find any abnormal condition (e.g. unusually high temperatures, smoke, odours, etc.) during use, please stop using immediately and contact the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.
- Modifying or repairing this power supply system without authorization is forbidden.
- The external wiring harness should be waterproof and sealed.

2 Driving

Driving procedures..... 80
Advice on driving in harsh environments 86
Advice on driving during run-in period..... 94
Hybrid electric vehicle..... 96
Power supply switch 102
Starting and shutting down the vehicle 104
Parking brake 106
Automatic transmission 109
Steering wheel assist mode 116
All-terrain control system.... 117
OFF ROAD mode..... 121
Differential lock switch 123
Parking system..... 127
Tyre pressure monitoring system 138
Driver fatigue warning system 140
Driver assist system 142
Off-road cruise control assist system..... 167
Hill descent control (HDC)... 171
Auxiliary control system 172
Emission control system..... 176
Instrument panel..... 178
Instrument indicator lights . 182
Power management system192
Trailer towing 195

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Before driving

Removing debris

Remove the snow and fallen leaves, etc. before driving.

Checking vehicle conditions

Check tyres, fluid, lights and body appearance before driving to ensure your safe and pleasant driving.

If your vehicle requires maintenance or repair, get in touch with the authorised service centre in a timely manner.

Confirming vehicle doors and bonnet status

Before driving, confirm all vehicle doors are closed. If a vehicle door has not been closed properly, it may open unexpectedly during the driving and cause an accident.

Before driving, if you have opened the bonnet, confirm that the bonnet has been locked down. If the bonnet has not been locked properly, it may open during driving and cause an accident.

Placing objects in-vehicle

On the instrument panel

Do not place any item on the instrument panel. The items placed on the instrument panel may not only obstruct the driver's view, but also affect the starting off and safe driving, which may lead to accidents.

The driver's feet well

Do not place any items at the feet well of the driver. Items placed at the driver's feet well may be trapped under pedals, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle, which leads to an accident.

If you want to use a floor mat, choose a suitable floor mat. If the selected floor mat shape and its layout position are inappropriate or if the floor mat is double stacked, pedal performance may be affected, which could lead to problems in starting the vehicle, braking, or difficulties in changing gear, and could result in an accident.

Under the seat

Do not place any items under the seat. Items placed under the seat will make it difficult to adjust the seat position or fasten the seat, which can easily lead to an accident.

Seat backrest

Do not place cushions and other items between the seat backrest and the back of the human body. Otherwise, the correct driving posture will be affected; besides, in the event of a vehicle collision, seat belts and head restraints will not function properly and provide full protection, and even serious life-threatening injuries will occur.

On the window glass

Do not attach decorative items like vacuum suction cups to window glass.

Vacuum suction cups can act as a lens, leading to a higher risk of fires.

Driving

No speeding

The vehicle should not exceed the speed indicated by speed limit signs or mark lines.

No overloading

Overloaded driving is dangerous.

Do not carry passengers or goods more than what is on the indicated maximum limit. Do not carry passengers in the luggage area or the trunk.

No fatigue driving

Fatigue driving is extremely dangerous as the judgement, view and attention of the driver in fatigue state will drop substantially. It can easily cause a serious accident.

No shutting down the vehicle

The brake assist device and power steering system will not function if the vehicle is shut down while driving, which may lead to deterioration of braking efficiency, and cause severe accident.

No turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time

Turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time may reduce the power assist effect of the steering system and you may feel heavier when turning the steering wheel.

No applying the brake for a long time

While driving, do not continuously depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Otherwise, it may lead to premature wear-and-tear in the brake pad or overheating in the brake, thereby affecting the braking efficiency and possibly leading to accidents.

Brake emitting a warning sound

The disc brake will emit a warning sound when the brake pad wears and needs to be replaced.

If you hear a rattling sound while braking, do not continue driving. Failure to do so will severely wear the brake disk, damage the brake parts and affect the braking efficiency or even lead to an accident.

Flat tyre

Do not continue to drive the vehicle with a flat tyre. Driving with a flat tyre is extremely dangerous and can easily cause a serious accident. In addition, the tyres, wheels, suspension and vehicle body will be damaged. At this moment, replace the tyre immediately.

When any of the following situations occurs, confirm whether the vehicle tyre is punctured or flat:

- The steering wheel shakes.
- The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently depress the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or turning the steering wheel sharply may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

A strong collision on chassis, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle

When the chassis, tyres, wheels, and drive system of the vehicle suffer a strong collision, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe spot and inspect the vehicle. Check for leakage in brake fluid and fuel, and for deformation or damage to the suspension, tyres, wheels, traction battery pack, drive system, etc. If you find signs of leakage or damage, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to an accident.

Driving downhill

No vehicle shutdown or neutral coasting

The braking force assist device and power steering system will not work if the vehicle is shut down while driving downhill. In this scenario, braking efficiency will be compromised and you may feel the steering wheel heavy, which is easy to cause an accident.

Driving on uneven road surfaces

When stopping the vehicle on a curb or on a road surface with a height difference, make sure that the tyres are not crushed and deformed by the curb or other obstacles.

When the vehicle must pass a curb, a speed bump or a similar obstacle, you should try to slow down along the vertical angle of the obstacle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tyre (especially to the side wall of the tyre).

Driving in the following road conditions may cause damage to the bumper. Slow down and drive carefully.

- Road sections with steps such as parking lot entrances and exits;
- Steep slopes such as sharp turns in multi-story parking lots;
- Potholes and rutted roads;
- Sections of road where there are potholes;
- Driving from a flat section to a ramp, or from a ramp to a flat section;
- Parking on a road with speed bumps or along a curb.

Driving on slippery road surfaces, such as wet, snowy or icy road surfaces

Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, or turning steering wheel sharply on slippery road surfaces may cause vehicle tyres to skid and the vehicle to go out of control, thereby causing an accident.

In cold weather, you should slow down when driving in areas that are prone to freezing, such as bridges and shady areas.

Driving on flooded roads

Be careful while driving on flooded roads.

Driving on flooded roads may lead to short circuit of electrical components or damage to electrical elements, resulting in a major accident.

While you drive on flooded roads, the brake pads will become wet, and the braking efficiency will be reduced, which can easily lead to an accident. Gently and repeatedly depress the brake pedal to warm up the brake until you confirm that it returns to normal.

Precautions for passengers

Moving within the vehicle is forbidden

It is forbidden for the passenger to leave his or her seat, or to move around inside the vehicle. Otherwise, during emergency braking, the passenger's body or head, etc., may suffer injurious impact.

Do not extend your hands or head outside the vehicle window or sunroof

If you stretch your hands or head out of the vehicle, it is prone to hitting against the window frame when braking the vehicle in emergency or closing the window. In this case, it may cause serious injury or even death.

Do not carry child passengers on your lap

When riding as a passenger, do not carry infant or child passengers on your lap even if you are already wearing a seat belt. Further, do not surround or enclose the infant or child using any part of the seat belt; this may cause grievous injury or even death during collisions or emergency braking.

Child passengers must not be allowed to operate equipment such as vehicle doors, vehicle windows and the sunroof

If child passengers are allowed to operate doors, windows and sunroof, they are at risk of clipping their hands, heads, necks, etc., in the operation, which will result in a serious personal injury.

If the vehicle door is opened during the driving, children, if not restrained correctly, could fall out of the vehicle, consequently causing serious injuries and even death.

Please use a child safety lock and a window lock switch to prevent children from accidents because of an incorrect operation.

Parking the vehicle

Do not park the vehicle close to flammable materials

Do not park your vehicle near flammable materials such as areas with plenty of grass/hay or scrap paper. Fires may be triggered by contact between the hot exhaust pipe and flammable materials.

If there is wood or plywood in the rear of the vehicle, keep the parking distance. If the distance is too close, it may cause fire.

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in poorly ventilated places

Allowing the engine to idle for extended periods in poorly ventilated areas such as garages can cause exhaust gas build-up, thereby causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

Economic driving

Predictable driving

Maintain a proper distance with the front running vehicle and avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. The stable vehicle speed can increase the range.

Avoiding unnecessary weight

Driving with a heavy load and overloading will increase energy consumption. Before driving, remove unnecessary items from the vehicle.

Checking tyre pressure periodically

Too small tyre pressure will increase the rolling resistance, thereby increasing the energy consumption while increasing the tyre wear.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and the best economy of your vehicle.

Turning off temporarily unnecessary electrical components

Turn off temporarily unnecessary functions such as the A/C, seat heating and rear window defroster to reduce power use.

Closing windows and sunroof

Opening the windows or the sunroof increases drag, keep them closed when not needed to reduce the energy consumption.

Coasting

The accelerator pedal should be released when approaching the red traffic light or driving downhill, allowing the vehicle to coast by inertia.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving in foggy weather

Turn on the fog lamps

While driving in fog, you should turn on the fog lamps.

Sound horn to warn pedestrians and vehicles

If you hear the horn of other vehicles, respond immediately by honking your horn to indicate your position.

Drive at low speed and look out for safety

When driving in foggy weather, try to travel at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Do not wipe fog on the glass during vehicle running

Due to large temperature difference inside and outside the cab, mist may condensates on the inside surface of the windscreen that can affect driver's sight. In this case, you can use the A/C defrosting function or open the vehicle windows a little to have the same air temperature inside and outside the vehicle. This will prevent condensation to form on the inside surface of windscreen.

If you wish to wipe away the condensation on the windscreen glass, please do so only after bringing the vehicle to a stop. Never try to do so while driving the vehicle.

Driving in the rain

Please drive carefully on slippery road surfaces

As poor vision, foggy windscreen and slippery roads are likely to occur when running on rainy days, please drive carefully.

When performing emergency braking, steering and accelerating on a slippery road, tyres may slip, making it difficult to control the vehicle, which may lead to an accident.

While driving in rain, water film can form between the tyre and the ground. At this time the tyre can easily lose its grip, so for safe driving you should slow down.

⚠ WARNING

Try to avoid driving in a heavy rain or a rainstorm.

Fording drive

Precautions for fording drive

› Before fording drive, confirm the water depth of the road area. If there is more water or the water depth is unknown, drive to take a detour and do not go through a direct course.

› By analysing road conditions, do not allow the vehicle to enter an unknown region. Such regions may contain hidden obstacles, such as ditches or manholes.

› While fording in the water, drive at a low speed and do not park or shift gears.

› When the vehicle passes an intersection, try to avoid the waves generated by the preceding vehicle to prevent water from entering the front grille.

› If a fault occurs while fording, causing the vehicle to power off (shut down) and become undrivable, do not attempt to restart the vehicle. Please consult the authorised service centre immediately for treatment.

Inspection and maintenance after fording

Promptly do the following after safely driving through water:

› Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.

› Test the horn.

› Test all the vehicle lights.

› Head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for routine inspection. During fording drive, water may enter the components and parts of the transmission system and dilute lubricant, which may lead to system malfunctions.

⚠ CAUTION

› Fording drive is only applicable in emergency situations and it cannot be used as a part of routine driving.

› Fording drive may damage the engine and electrical components.

› Do not drive through salty waters, beaches or salt water areas as salt may cause vehicle corrosion. If you drive through the above areas, immediately use fresh water to flush all parts that have been in contact with salt water.

In hot weather

Hot weather and high temperature in summer are bad for the normal vehicle running and the health of driver. To ensure driving safety, the driver shall pay attention to the following items:

To prevent the engine from overheating

The engine is prone to overheating in the hot season due to higher ambient temperature. Therefore, please step up the inspection and maintenance of the engine cooling system, and remove debris embedded in the radiator chips.

Preventing flat tyre

As air pressure in the vehicle tyre rises with temperature increase, flat tyre is likely to occur in case of hot weather and high temperature in hot season.

If you experience a flat tyre in the course of the drive, hold the steering wheel securely, step gently on the brake pedal to decelerate, and avoid actions such as emergency braking or sudden steering. Failure to adhere to the advice may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Preventing sunstroke

Strong sunlight and high temperature in hot season easily lead to sunstroke. Keep the driving room well ventilated and prohibit fatigue driving.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave a child in the vehicle unattended.

- Leaving children alone in the vehicle during hot seasons can easily cause heat stroke, dehydration, personal injury or even death.
- If the child, left alone in the vehicle, plays with matches, lighters other items, it is easy to cause vehicle fire accidents.

⚠ CAUTION

When parking the vehicle, do not leave items such as lighters, spray can, soft drink cans, spectacles, etc., inside the vehicle.

- As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, a leakage of gas from the lighter, spray cans or cracks in these containers can lead to fire.
- Should a soft drink can burst inside the vehicle, its contents may splash onto electrical components and cause short circuit.
- As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, it is easy to make resin lens or glasses deformation, resulting in crack.

Driving in cold season

Winter tyre

In cold season when the temperature is low, due to the special characteristics of the normal tyres (tyre width, rubber composition and pattern type, etc.), the elasticity of tyres decreases, further weakening the traction and braking force. At the same time, the tyres noise will be increased. In severe cases, it can even lead to serious cracks, abnormal wear and tear and other permanent damage of normal tyres. It is recommended to use winter tyres when the temperature is lower than 7°C in cold season. Winter tyres can not only greatly improve the vehicle control stability, but also improve the vehicle braking response and shorten the braking distance.

NOTICE

Although all-weather tyres with M + S markings are better for cold season, they fail to achieve the performance of winter tyres. Therefore, it is still necessary to use winter tyres for driving on snowy or icy roads.

WARNING

Although winter tyres can improve the vehicle driving performance in winter, do not drive at risk situation, and still keep cautious!

- Be sure to adjust your speed and driving style based on visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not exceed the speed limit and load rating indicated on the installed winter tyres when driving.

CAUTION

When the pattern of winter tyres is severely worn, their applicability to cold season will be largely lost. If winter tyres have aged, their applicability to cold season will largely be lost even though the tyre pattern wear is insignificant. Consult the dealer for specific replacement standards of winter tyres.

Instructions for using winter tyres:

- You must comply with the relevant laws and regulations of the country where the winter tyres are used.
- The four wheels must have winter tyres installed at the same time.
- Always use winter tyres having the same size as the normal tyre.
- Winter tyres having the same model, size (rolling circumference) and type must be used.
- Winter tyres can only be used during the cold season.

› Be sure to comply with the allowable maximum limits for winter tyres (such as maximum speed, maximum load, etc.). Otherwise, tyres may be damaged, causing traffic accidents.

› Do not reverse the rotation direction of the tyres.

Snow chains

The use of snow chains depends on the current standards in specific countries or regions, and the installation of snow chains must comply with local regulations.

Install snow chains on the drive wheels only. Do not install snow chains on only one tyre. Install snow chains following the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer and tighten them as tightly as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when installing snow chains:

› Improper size or installation of snow chains will damage the vehicle brake pipeline, the suspension, the body and tyres, etc. Choose suitable snow chains and ensure that they are properly installed.

› Install snow chains in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and set the warning triangle behind the vehicle.

› Always set the power supply mode to OFF and apply the parking brake before installing the snow chains.

› Do not install snow chains on emergency wheels or small size spare tyres.

› Do not install snow chains when the tyre pressure is low.

› Do not damage aluminium alloy wheel rim when using snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions when driving with snow chains:

› After installing snow chains, the driving speed should not exceed 40 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the snow chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.

› After installing snow chains, always check that the snow chains are properly installed after travelling 0.5 to 1.0 kilometres to ensure safety. Retighten or reinstall the snow chains if they are loose.

› After installing snow chains, the vehicle control may be adversely affected. Operations such as sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking should be avoided as much as possible; otherwise accidents may occur.

- When driving, if you hear the snow chains knocking on the vehicle body or chassis, stop the vehicle and re-tighten the snow chains. If you can still hear the sound, slow down until the sound disappears.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Slow down before entering the curve, so that you can control the vehicle.
- Remove the snow chains when driving on road surfaces without snow, or they may affect driving performance and severely damage tyres.

⚠ WARNING

When parking on snowy roads, shut down the vehicle powertrain.

- If the engine is running at the start of the vehicle with snow accumulated around it, exhaust gas may seep inside the vehicle interior, causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.
- When you feel that exhaust gas comes into the vehicle, you can take the following measures:

  Drive the vehicle to a ventilated area and lower all the windows.

  Set the A/C to the external circulation mode, adjust the airflow to the maximum, and introduce fresh air from the outside into the vehicle.

Off-road driving alerts

- Off-road driving is full of fun, but it doesn't mean drivers can be careless. At all times, drivers should handle situations seriously and cautiously and avoid taking risks in dangerous areas. Otherwise, it can be very dangerous if things go wrong.
- When driving off-road, safety is of utmost importance and should be the top priority at all times. Before driving, ensure that all passengers wear seat belts and secure all items firmly to prevent danger from moving objects inside the vehicle while it is moving.
- When driving off-road, do not grasp the spokes of the steering wheel, as severe bumps may twist the wheel and injure your hands.
- If you are going to drive through water, check the water depth and the firmness of the riverbed first. Drive slowly and avoid deep water areas. If necessary, take essential safety measures to prevent the engine or other components from water damage.
- After driving over grass, mud, gravel, sand or through a river, check for weeds, branches, gravel, sand etc. under the vehicle body. Remove such debris. Failure to do so may cause vehicle malfunctions or even fires while driving.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- After driving over sand, mud, water or snow, check the brake for proper operation. Mud and sand sticking around the brake disc can affect braking performance and may damage braking system components.
- If you drive in dusty conditions or on sand, the air filter will be severely affected. Therefore, bring at least one spare genuine air filter element. When driving in dusty conditions, check the air filter daily. Check the air filter immediately after driving on sand. If any abnormal condition is found during the inspection, promptly clean or replace the air filter to prevent engine damage.
- Higher ground clearance enables the driver to have better vision, detect road conditions in time and adjust the driving style according to the specific terrain conditions.
- Before returning to the highway after off-road driving, clean the tyres to remove foreign objects such as mud and small stones. Otherwise, a large amount of mud and stones on the tyres may cause serious damage to windscreen and other components when you drive at a high speed on the highway. Also, check the tyres for good condition and check the tyre tread and sides for damage to ensure that there is no damage to the tyres that could cause a tyre burst at high speed. Also, remove mud and dust from the lights, windows, windscreens and the license plate.

⚠ WARNING

- Due to higher ground clearance and centre of gravity, avoid high speed driving, sudden starts, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Otherwise, the vehicle may lose control or overturn due to incorrect operation. Drive more carefully when loading goods on the roof luggage rack, as loading goods will raise the centre of gravity of the vehicle again.
- Slow down in case of a crosswind. A vehicle with higher ground clearance and centre of gravity is more vulnerable to crosswinds. Lowering the speed helps better control the vehicle.

- When driving on rough roads, do not drive too fast, jump or hit objects; otherwise, the vehicle may lose control or overturn, resulting in serious injuries or death, and potentially damaging the suspension and chassis severely.
- When driving on a steep slope, drive straight up or down rather than horizontally. Driving horizontally on a steep slope may cause a rollover due to the high centre of gravity.

Advices on inspection and maintenance

After off-road driving in poor road conditions such as sand (dusty roads), mud, water or salt roads, check the following items promptly and perform maintenance or repairs as needed:

- Test the horn.
- Test all the vehicle lights.
- Check the bottom of the vehicle for oil and fluid leaks.
- Check all components on the bottom of the vehicle for good condition. Promptly remove any hay or other debris to eliminate potential hazards that could cause breakdowns and fires.
- Check the differential, transmission and transfer case (if equipped) for water or mud.
- Check the air filter and related pipes for water.
- Check the air filter for sand and clean it promptly.
- Check for mud or debris on the radiator, condenser, oil cooler, intercooler and fan, and clean them promptly.
- Check the motor for water or mud in time, and clean it promptly.
- Check for normal tyre pressure and cracks or damage on tyre treads and sides.
- Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check all brake functions for proper operation.
- Check the winch (if equipped) for accumulated water.
- Check the shock absorber for damage or oil leaks.
- Check the engine belt (if installed) for damage.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyres

Take extra care in the first 500 km when driving with a set of new tyres.

New tyres do not offer optimal grip until they have been break-in.

Brake pad

The new brake pad hardly achieves optimal braking effect within first 400 km vehicle running.

The new brake pad must first undergo a break-in period to achieve optimal friction. If you feel that the braking force of the vehicle is insufficient, you can depress the brake pedal harder to increase the braking force.

During the run-in period, avoid applying extra load on the brake. For example, emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.

⚠ CAUTION

- The brake pad and the brake disc may wear to different degrees depending on the using condition and the driving method.
- Due to the vehicle speed, braking force and environmental conditions (such as temperature and humidity), there may be noise when braking, which is normal.

Transmission

To optimize gearshift comfort and extend the transmission's lifespan, new, overhauled, or recently serviced transmissions with fluid replacement must undergo a run-in period. During the first 300 kilometres of driving, the load should be gradually increased starting from no load. Please observe the precautions listed below:

- It is recommended to drive smoothly with light to moderate throttle to avoid rapid acceleration or deceleration.
- Avoid emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.
- When waiting at traffic lights or during temporary parking, it is recommended to shift to the P gear and allow the transmission to perform self-learning.

CAUTION

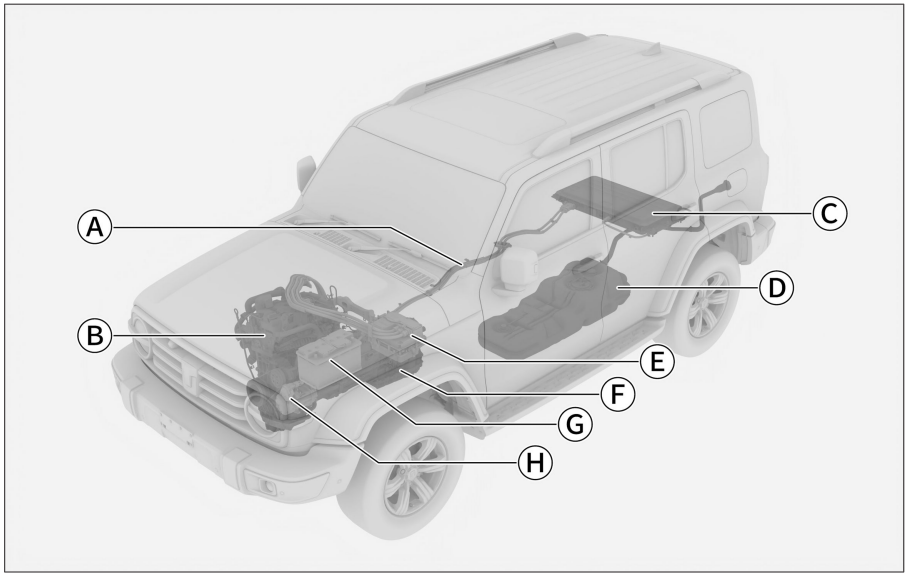
- During the break-in period, there may be a slight rush when shifting gears. This is normal. This phenomenon disappears after a full break-in period for the transmission.
- During the run-in period, there may be a slight noise and rush when shifting gears. This is normal. This phenomenon disappears after a full break-in period for the transmission.

Hybrid electric vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About hybrid vehicle



60516F9942E8

Ⓐ High-voltage wiring harness
Ⓑ Engine
Ⓒ Power battery pack
Ⓓ Fuel tank
Ⓔ Motor controller
Ⓕ Transmission
Ⓖ Battery
Ⓗ A/C compressor

This vehicle is a hybrid vehicle, which is different from ordinary fuel vehicles in characteristics. Please be familiar with the characteristics of the hybrid vehicle and drive it carefully.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not touch, remove or replace parts with high-voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on the vehicle to prevent high-voltage electric shock.

› After the vehicle is started, the power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning label.

The hybrid system uses a combination of the engine and the drive motor depending on the vehicle operating conditions and driving mode, thereby improving fuel efficiency and reducing emissions.

› The drive motor usually drives the vehicle at a low speed.

› The engine generally drives the vehicle at high speed or during more active driving.

Power battery recovery

For the replacement and disposal of the power battery, please always consult authorised service centre and get the recovery requirements. Discarding the power battery arbitrarily will may pollute the environment or cause safety accidents.

⚠ WARNING

› Never sell, transfer or modify the power battery.

If the power battery is used outside the vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, burn, smoke, electrolyte leakage and explosion may occur.

› Do not dispose of the power battery by yourself. Otherwise, it will pollute the environment and electric shock may occur.

› To ensure your safety, do not open or modify the power battery pack under any circumstances. If the power battery needs to be repaired, disassembled, replaced and scrapped, it shall be handed over to the authorised service centre for disposal.

High-voltage warning signs

⚠ WARNING

› Only professionals should operate the parts of the vehicle with high-voltage warning signs.

› Any person must not use fingers, tools, decorations or other metal objects to approach or touch the parts where the high-voltage warning signs are pasted.

› The gas leaked or escaped from the traction battery pack may be toxic or flammable. Stay away from the vehicle in the event of an accident to avoid personal injury or even death.

High-voltage signs



C40E90CFEA3D

These signs are located on high-voltage parts to remind you of the following:

- There is high voltage inside these parts.
- Never remove, repair or replace the part without authorization, and pay attention to the relevant matters.
- Do not touch high-voltage parts, otherwise, there may be a risk of electric shock.

Traction battery labels

Type I



B4ADC49EFD38

Type II



The labels are located on the traction battery pack. Please read carefully and comply with the warnings on the labels to avoid serious injury or death.

NOTICE

The labels may vary between countries and regions in their appearance and language. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Energy recovery

The function mainly converts a part of the kinetic energy of the vehicle during braking or coasting into electric energy of the traction battery, thereby extending the range.

You can set the energy recovery level through the 【Car】→【Drive】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

⚠ WARNING

The reduction of vehicle speed caused by energy recovery cannot be a substitute for normal braking. Depress the brake pedal during deceleration and parking.

ℹ NOTICE

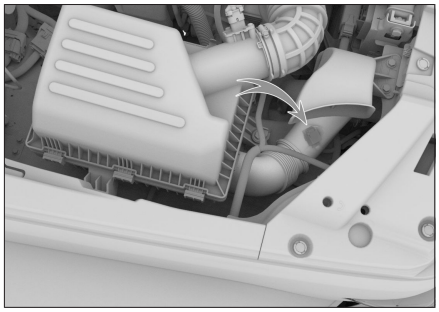
When the vehicle experiences noticeable deceleration due to the activation of the energy recovery function, the brake light may turn on.

ℹ NOTICE

The energy recovery will not be carried out when the vehicle is under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is in the N gear position.
- The traction battery is fully charged.
- The temperature of the traction battery is too high or too low.

Battery safety switch



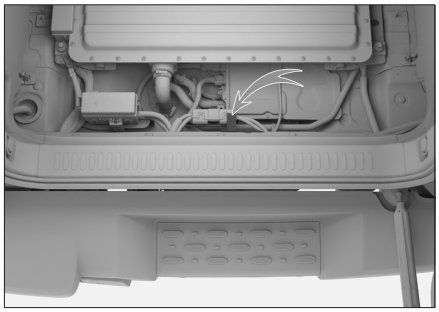
284CB37B31F9

The battery safety switch is located in the engine compartment, below the air filter intake pipe, and is used to disconnect or connect the power supply to the high voltage system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to operate the battery safety switch. The battery safety switch is only used when servicing the vehicle and performing operations related to high voltage system.

Emergency cut-off point

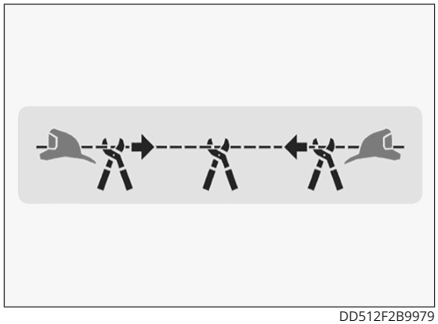


FA8D1B89F1FA

The emergency cut-off point is located in the luggage area and can be seen by removing the luggage area cover and the tool tray that comes with the vehicle.

The emergency cut-off point is located in the luggage area and is a section of low voltage wiring harness marked with the emergency cut-off sign. In an emergency, to ensure the safety of personnel and the smooth implementation of emergency rescue, the wiring harness can be cut.

Emergency cut-off sign



DD512F2B9979

In case of emergency cut-off, it is necessary to cut the low-voltage wiring harness 2 to 3 times at intervals within the effective range. Cutting the wiring harness only once will easily lead to secondary reconnection of the wiring harness, resulting in serious personal injury.

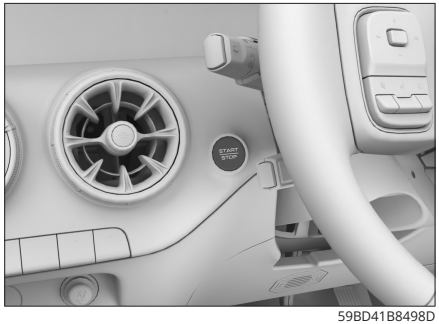
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Power supply switch

Power supply mode switching

When carrying a smart key, directly press the power supply switch to change the power supply mode.



59BD41B8498D

Sequence	Mode	Effect
1	OFF	Electrical components are in the non-working state.
2	ON	All electrical components can be used.

NOTICE

When the smart key is carried, depress the brake pedal with the shift lever in the P position. The vehicle can be started by pressing the power switch regardless of the mode of the power switch.

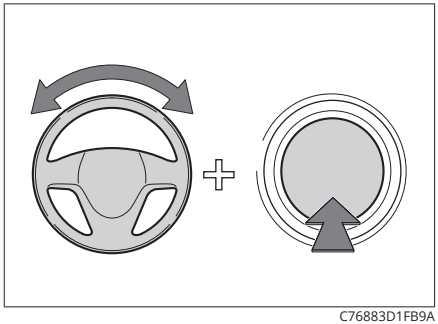
WARNING

Do not switch the power supply to OFF mode while driving.

CAUTION

- Do not place a smart key on the instrument panel, on the ground, in the storage box, or in the luggage area. Otherwise, the power supply mode cannot be switched.
- When the vehicle is not started, do not keep the power supply in the ON mode for a extended period of time to prevent draining the battery voltage.
- When you leave vehicle, switch the power supply to OFF mode and carry the key with you.

Failing to unlock the ESCL



C76883D1FB9A

If the multi-information display indicates that ESCL unlock has failed when the power switch mode is changed or the vehicle is started, gently turn the steering wheel to the right and left and press the power supply switch as well to unlock it.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Starting the vehicle

Normal starting

1. Carry the smart key with you.
2. Adjust the seat position and take correct driving posture.
3. Confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
4. Confirm that the P gear position is engaged.
5. Step on the brake pedal.
6. Press the power supply switch to start the vehicle. (At this time, the indicator light READY in the instrument cluster being on indicates that the drive system is ready.)

NOTICE

After the vehicle is started, the engine will be started or stopped automatically according to the vehicle state.

Emergency start



499575834BC6

If the prompt "check whether the key is in the vehicle" is shown (such as the under-voltage intelligent key, serious damage to the door guard or the rear bumper and other situations), place the intelligent key above the sign in the cup holder to perform the normal starting operation of the vehicle, and then the vehicle can be started. If the vehicle cannot be started, contact the authorised service centre immediately.

WARNING

- Be sure to sit on the driver seat before starting the vehicle. Failure to do so may lead to accident, serious injury or even death.
- Do not step on the accelerator pedal under any circumstances when starting the vehicle.
- Always start the vehicle even if you need to move the vehicle slightly. Otherwise, an accident may occur.

NOTICE

Try not to store the vehicle in an environment with a very low temperature, otherwise, the vehicle may not be able to start.

Shutting down the vehicle

Normal shutdown

1. After the vehicle is stopped steadily, switch to the P gear position.
2. Press the power supply switch and set the power supply to OFF mode to shut down the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not touch high-temperature components such as the engine, the exhaust pipe, and the radiator immediately after shutting down the engine. Otherwise, you may be burned.

NOTICE

After the engine has operated at a high speed or with a high load for a long time, it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for a short time or drive at a low speed for some distance.

Emergency shutdown

During driving (at a speed greater than 5 km/h), in the case of an emergency, for example, failure to stop in a normal way, you can shut down the vehicle through any of the following operations:

› Press and hold the power supply switch for more than 2 seconds.

› Press the power supply switch for 3 consecutive times within 2 seconds.

WARNING

› Shut down the vehicle while driving may cause a collision or major personal injury.

› Do not forcibly shut down the vehicle while driving in non-emergency situations.

When the vehicle is forcibly shut down, the brake and steering wheel power will be lost. As a result, it is more laborious to step on the brake pedal and the steering wheel is heavier. Therefore, decelerate as much as possible before shutting down the vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

⚠ WARNING

- Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- If the slope is too steep, use of the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Electronic parking brake

Applying the electronic parking brake



F24CF4481AB1

- When the vehicle is stationary and the power supply is switched to OFF mode, the electronic parking brake (EPB) will automatically apply. At this point, the parking brake indicator light Ⓟ on the instrument panel turns on.
- If the parking brake is not required, press and hold the EPB switch while switching the power supply to OFF mode.
- After the vehicle is stationary, pull up the EPB switch to apply the parking brake. At this point, the parking brake indicator light Ⓟ on the instrument panel turns on.

Emergency braking

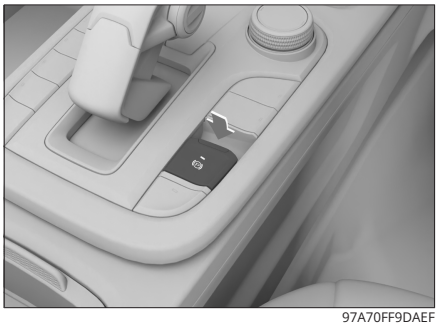
In case of emergency, pull up the EPB switch and hold it, and then use the EPB system to brake the vehicle.

Release the EPB switch or depress the accelerator pedal to cancel the emergency braking.

WARNING

The emergency braking function can only be used in case of an emergency (e.g. the brake pedal is blocked).

Releasing the electronic parking brake



97A70FF9DAEF

When the power supply is in ON mode, step on the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the parking brake. At this time, the parking brake indicator light Ⓟ on the instrument panel turns off.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is powered off abnormally, the parking brake fault warning light Ⓟ on the instrument panel turns on after the vehicle is powered on again. In this case, the system requires self-learning. Pull up the EPB switch first, then depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the EPB normally.

AVH function



934A114EA2A6

Auto vehicle hold (AVH) eliminates the need for the driver to step on the brake pedal for extended periods or apply the electronic parking brake frequently when the vehicle is on a slope, meets red traffic lights or stops and goes. It allows the driver to drive more comfortably and reduces the risk of vehicle rolling.

After the driver door is closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, and the vehicle is started, press the AVH switch to activate or deactivate the AVH function.

Instructions

1. Activate the AVH function. At this time, the AVH function is in the ready state, and the AVH indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument panel turns on in yellow.

2. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically apply the parking braking. At this time, the auto vehicle hold function is in operation, and the AVH indicator light on the instrument panel turns on in green.
3. When the shift lever is placed in D, M or R gear position, depress the accelerator pedal and the parking brake will automatically release.

   If the accelerator pedal is not depressed for a long time, the AVH function will be deactivated, and the vehicle will automatically switch to electronic parking mode, thus applying the braking force.

The following conditions will deactivate the AVH function forcedly:

- Release the driver seat belt.
- The driver door is opened.
- Switch the power supply mode to OFF.
- The AVH function has been working for more than 3 minutes.

CAUTION

In case of automatic vehicle washing, towing, etc., deactivate the AVH function.

Automatic departure function

With the parking brake applied to the vehicle, the parking brake will automatically release when the driver fastens the seat belt, and depresses the accelerator pedal, and the system detects the driver's intention to depart.

On a slope, more traction is required to avoid rolling.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to gear positions

Park (P) gear position

The P gear position is used to assist in parking the vehicle. When the P gear position is engaged, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Reverse (R) gear position

The R gear position is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear position

The N gear position is an unpowered gear position, and the transmission system is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear position is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

› When stopping the vehicle temporarily in the N gear position, be sure to apply parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.

› Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear position engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Automatic mode (D)

The D gear position is recommended for normal driving.

When the D gear position is engaged, the transmission can automatically adjust to the appropriate gear position based on the vehicle speed and the required acceleration, to achieve the best economy.

Manual mode (M)

The M gear position is recommended for speeding up and overtaking or driving uphill and downhill.

Lower gear positions of M gear position are recommended for bumpy road, ramp and the like.

Gear shifting

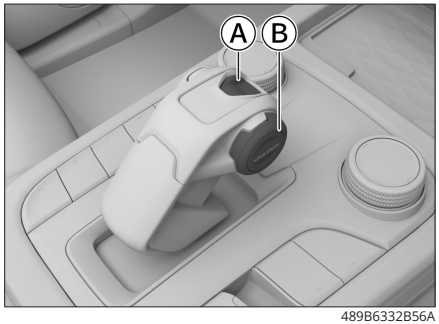
Start the engine and then perform normal gear shifting operations. The brake pedal should be depressed all the time before the vehicle starts off; otherwise, the vehicle will automatically move when the shift lever is in the D gear position.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid the damage to the vehicle or accidents, the vehicle must be completely stopped before the gear position is shifted.

NOTICE

When the gear shifting is completed, confirm that the correct gear position is engaged.



489B6332B56A

Ⓐ Parking gear button

Ⓑ Unlock button

Shifting to the P gear position

When the vehicle is stationary, press the parking gear button.

NOTICE

When the power supply is in ON mode, the vehicle will automatically switch to the P gear position under the following conditions.

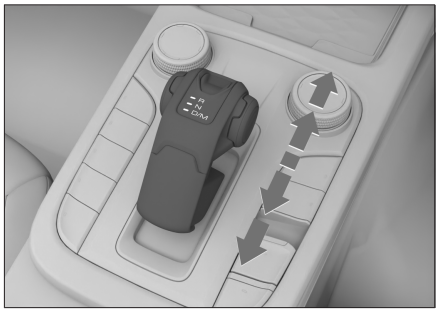
› When the vehicle is stationary and the gear position is not in N, set the power supply to OFF mode.

› The vehicle is stationary, and the driver seat belt is not worn, and the driver door is opened.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stationary and the gear position is in N, set the power supply to OFF mode, and keep the gear position in N, allowing for easy manual pushing of the vehicle.

Shifting to the D, R, N or M gear position



584721EA1242

Move the shift lever in the direction required and release the shift lever to return it to the neutral position automatically.

When shifting out of the P gear position or shift to the R gear position, depress the brake pedal and press the unlock button. When shifting to the D gear position, depress the brake pedal.

After shifting to the D gear position, push the lever backwards into the M gear position and push it backwards again to move the lever back to the D gear position.

The engaged gear position will be shown on the lever and the instrument multi-information display.

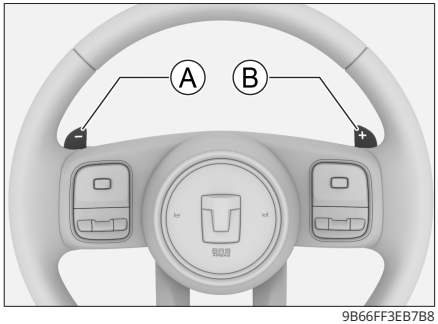
⚠ WARNING

If a transmission-related error message appears on the instrument panel, the transmission may enter the emergency operation mode. At this point, you can only shift to a specific gear position or simply cannot shift gear positions, and the engine may stall. Stop at a safe place as soon as possible and contact the authorised service centre.

Gear shifting in manual mode

ℹ NOTICE

In manual mode, if the engine speed is too high or too low, the transmission will automatically shift to a proper gear position to protect the engine.



9B66FF3EB7B8

Ⓐ Downshift paddle

Ⓑ Upshift paddle

Because of a paddle shifter, you can complete the upshift or downshift without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

When driving in the manual mode, you can upshift or downshift manually by toggling the shift paddle on the steering wheel.

When driving in the automatic mode, you can temporarily activate the manual mode by toggling the shift paddle on the steering wheel. In this case, you can upshift or downshift manually by pushing the paddle shifter.

When driving in temporary manual mode, you can switch from the manual mode to the automatic mode by toggling the upshift paddle for a long time.

Unlocking the P gear position in an emergency

If the transmission cannot be switched from the P gear position to other gear positions by normal operation of the lever, you can unlock the P gear position in an emergency.

⚠ CAUTION

› In this situation, contact the authorised service centre and such breakdown should be solved by the professionals. Unauthorized operations may damage vehicle components.

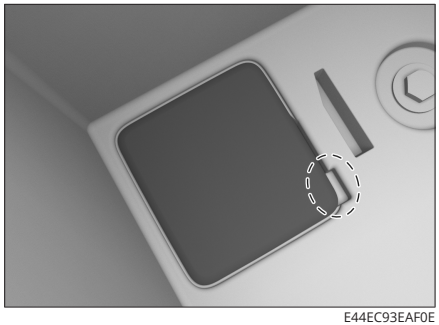
› When the shift lever needs emergency unlocking, it indicates that the vehicle has problems.Take the vehicle to authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

1. Shut off the engine and apply parking brake.
2. Open the storage box and remove the pad from the bottom of the box.



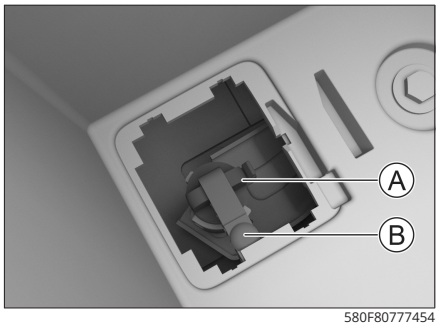
61EA21A8069C

3. At the notch in the square cover plate, use a flat-head screwdriver wrapped in cloth to pry the cover plate open to reveal the P gear unlocking cable.



E44EC93EAF0E

4. Turn the P gear unlocking cable handle by approx. 60 degrees counterclockwise to make it enter into the slide slot.



580F80777454

Ⓐ P gear unlocking cable handle

Ⓑ Cable

5. Pull up the cable to pull the unlocking handle to the top and hold it for about 18 seconds. When the instrument panel shows the N gear position or the N gear position indicator light of the shift lever is on, it means that the P gear position is successfully unlocked. At this time, the transmission is in N gear position. Release the cable.
6. Immediately after moving the vehicle, follow the reversed procedure described above to return the P gear unlocking cable to its original position. This prevents the transmission from remaining forcefully deactivated from the P gear position for an extended period of time.

Crawling function

After the engine is started, you shall switch the shift lever to the driving position, and release the parking brake and the brake pedal. At this time, you don't need to step on the accelerator pedal, and the vehicle can crawl slowly.

Starting off

Normal starting off

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt, and confirm that the parking brake is applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal and engage the D gear position.

   If you need more traction when starting off (such as hill starting), shift to the M gear position.
4. Release the brake pedal and then gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

NOTICE

When the vehicle starts off, the auto departure function will automatically release the parking brake.

Launch control

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt, and confirm that the parking brake is applied.
2. Start the vehicle, straighten the steering wheel, and deactivate the electronic stability control system.
3. Switch the driving mode to sport mode.
4. Depress the brake pedal, shift to the D gear position, and release the parking brake.
5. Depress the accelerator pedal completely, and the instrument panel prompts 【Launch Control activated】.
6. After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle begins launch control until it has completely started off.

CAUTION

- If you depress the brake pedal or release the accelerator pedal during the launch control process, the launch control mode will exit.
- If the brake pedal is not released for a long time (about 5 s), the vehicle enters a timeout state, and the instrument panel prompts 【Launch Control time-out】 to protect the clutch and brake system. When the vehicle is in a timeout state, release the brake and accelerator pedals before exiting the timeout state for the next launch control.

› Compared with normal starting off, launch control increases the load on relevant parts of the drive system and accelerates the wear and deterioration of the clutch. To protect the service life of the hardware, do not continuously use this function without restriction.

WARNING

› Be sure to drive carefully to the extent permitted by law.

› Use this function only when it is deemed safe according to surrounding traffic conditions.

› Avoid using this function on slippery roads. Otherwise, the vehicle may get out of control, causing an accident.

NOTICE

› With the traction battery in a low SOC level or at too low or too high temperature, the launch control function may not be available for use.

› With the steering wheel turned at a large angle or the road slope too steep, the launch control function may not be available.

Parking

1. After releasing the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.

NOTICE

This vehicle uses an electronic brake booster system, which is slightly different from the model equipped with the vacuum power-assisted brake system. For example, after stepping on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, you can continue to step it to the maximum position (step to the bottom), which is a normal phenomenon.

2. After the engine speed is stable, engage the P gear position.
3. Apply the parking brake or shut down the vehicle engine directly as required.

NOTICE

After the vehicle engine is shut down, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

4. Release the brake pedal.

CAUTION

› When it is necessary to stop the vehicle temporarily at the slope, the brake pedal must be stepped on or the parking brake must be applied. Do not use accelerate pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle stable, otherwise the transmission will be damaged.

› Do not engage the P gear position to park on the slope. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.

› When stopping the vehicle on a slope, wedge the wheels if necessary to prevent rolling.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Switching method

Separate switching: when the power supply is set to the ON mode, you can switch between steering wheel assist modes, including light, comfort and sport, through the 【Car】 → 【Drive】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Linkage switching: when switching the driving mode or the all-terrain control system, the steering wheel assist mode will also be switched by linkage:

All-terrain mode	Steering wheel assist mode
ECO	Light
Standard	Comfort
Sport	Sport
Snow	Sport
Mud	Comfort
Sand	Comfort
4L	Comfort

NOTICE

When switching between steering wheel assist modes, the following conditions need to be met:

- The electric power steering system is functioning correctly.
- The speed of the vehicle is less than 125 km/h.
- No apparent turn operation has been carried out.

Light

It increases steering power for easy steering. It is applicable to traffic congestion driving environment such as urban areas.

Comfort

It is suitable for general driving habits.

Sport

It reduces steering power and increases steering wheel feedback. It is recommended to use it under high speed, rain and snow and other cases.

Vehicle equipment

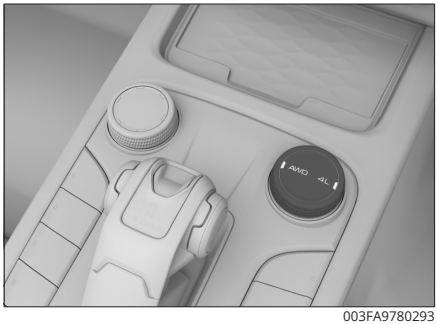
Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

All-terrain control system introduction

In complex road conditions, depending on the selected driving mode, the system will automatically optimize the vehicle's control systems to suit the terrain, improving steering ability, stability and cross-country capability.

4WD switching

Switching method



003FA9780293

Once the engine has started, ensure the vehicle is at a standstill, set the shift lever to N and turn the 4WD mode knob to switch between AWD and 4L modes. When selecting a mode, the corresponding indicator light turns on. After switching is finished, the indicator light will be normally on.

NOTICE

- If switching between the drive modes is abnormal and relevant alarm information appears on the instrument, follow the alarm prompt on the instrument to operate. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch the modes again.
- When switching between the drive modes, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- If the steering wheel is not in the centre position, you will feel an increase in resistance when switching between 4WD modes, which is normal.
- In the 4L mode, the intelligent start/stop system is disabled and the electronic stability control system is turned off by default.

CAUTION

- When driving on normal roads or motorways, never use the 4L mode. Otherwise, there will be noise, serious tyre wear, increased fuel consumption, damage to the drive system and other issues.
- When the rear wheels of the vehicle skid on a snowy and icy road, do not switch between the drive modes.
- While driving in the 4L mode, the vehicle speed should be less than 40 km/h and avoid sharp turns, otherwise alarm will occur and the vehicle parts may be damaged.
- Driving is prohibited and the gear must remain in gear N until the 4L mode is successfully entered and exited, otherwise the transfer case may be damaged.
- For driving in 4L mode, the hill descent control (HDC) system is automatically turned on if the gear is shifted to the manual mode. To ensure safe driving, do not turn off the hill descent control (HDC) system in this case.

Mode introduction

AWD mode: in AWD mode, in combination with the all-terrain knob, switch between different driving modes to suit a wide range of road conditions.
(▷ Page 118)

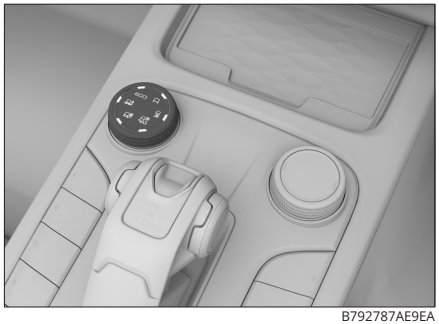
4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions. By increasing the reduction ratio by one stage, the vehicle is given the maximum traction, providing effective power support for going over steep slopes and for the vehicle rescue.

All-terrain switching

CAUTION

- If you use the driving modes incorrectly, the vehicle will respond erroneously to road conditions so that the life of the suspension and transmission systems will be reduced.
- Before the vehicle enters a complex terrain, the driver should judge the terrain in advance and activate the appropriate all-terrain mode to prevent the vehicle from losing control.

Switching method



B792787AE9EA

When the power supply is set to the ON mode, the vehicle is stationary or moving in a straight line at a low speed, and the 4WD vehicle is in AWD mode,

Turn the knob to switch between 【ECO】 economy, standard, sport, snow, sand and mud modes. When a mode is selected, the corresponding indicator light will go on.

Mode introduction

- 【ECO】 economy mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. The tuning gives priority to fuel economy to reduce fuel consumption while maintaining driving experience.
- Standard mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, concrete roads or hard roads covered by little ice. It can provide you optimized and balanced driving experience on good roads.
- Sport mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. By increasing the idle speed and delaying the upshift, the system outputs strong power during start and acceleration.
- Snow mode: this mode is suitable for light snow, ice, grass, gravel and other slippery roads. The vehicle starts at the second gear position and the power output in 4WD mode is smooth. You can enjoy great driving manoeuverability and stability.
- Mud mode: this mode is suitable for driving on muddy roads, driving off-road and getting out of trouble. Under this mode, the vehicle can make the best use of all tyres' traction to get strong power and great off-road ability by electronic limited slip.
- Sand mode: this mode is suitable for dry and soft roads such as Gobi or desert. It is recommended to set the tyre pressure to 1.0 bar for driving in the desert

Operating precautions for driving 4WD vehicles

- Do not perform 2WD hub tests in any mode (including the operation such as the front wheel does not turn, the rear wheel continues to slip on the raceway or on the ice and snow road).

- When the vehicle is getting out of a difficult situation (for example, the vehicle is stuck in a tyre slippage condition such as snow, mud, sand, climbing, and so on), the thermal protection function of the 4WD system may be triggered due to continuous tyre slippage. In this case, stop the effort to getting out of the difficult situation immediately and park the vehicle to dissipate heat in a safe condition, and wait for the 4WD system to automatically cancel the overheating warning (it is recommended to wait a few more minutes after the alarm is eliminated, so that the temperature of the 4WD system will drop lower and the performance will recover better), and then try again.
- Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent:

  If a tyre needs to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and model;

  If it is not possible to guarantee the consistency of the tyres (including the replacement of a non-full-size spare tyre), the vehicle must be driven in the ECO mode and the tyre must be replaced as soon as possible (with a mileage of not more than 50 kilometres) to ensure that all four tyres are of the same brand and model;

  If a tyre pressure warning appears, promptly confirm it and refill the tyre to the correct pressure to cancel the warning.
- Avoid operation in drifting conditions.
- On high-adhesion roads (such as normal roads and cement grounds), do not use snow, mud, sand and 4L modes.
- Do not start the vehicle or turn the tyres when lifting a vehicle in 4L mode with a jack.

  Otherwise, the vehicle may detach from the jack and rush out, which is very dangerous.

Vehicle equipment

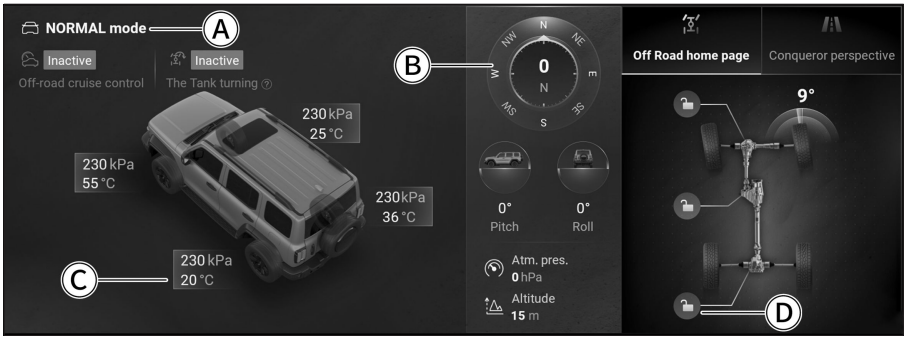
Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

OFF ROAD mode

Touch the 【OFF ROAD Mode】 button in the multimedia application interface to enter the OFF ROAD mode interface.

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle models, countries or regions, some features of the off road mode may not be fitted to your vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.



D0612C3A84BC

Ⓐ All-terrain mode

Ⓑ Vehicle head direction

Ⓒ Tyre temperature and pressure

Ⓓ Differential lock status

Off Road home page

You can view off-road related information on this interface.

› 【Wheel rotation】: it displays the wheel rotation and angle.

› Differential lock status: it displays the differential lock status as locked or unlocked.

› All-terrain mode: it displays the all-terrain mode used by the vehicle.

› 【Off-road cruise control】: it displays the working status of off-road cruise control.

› 【The Tank turning】: it displays the working status of the Tank turning (steering assist).

› Tyre temperature and pressure: it displays the tyre temperature and pressure. If the tyre temperature or pressure is abnormal, the corresponding value will be displayed in yellow.

NOTICE

Depending on the software versions, the abnormal tyre warning for some models may appear in red. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

› Vehicle head direction: it displays the vehicle head direction.

› 【Pitch】: it displays the pitch of the vehicle.

› 【Roll】: it displays the roll of the vehicle.

› 【Altitude】: it displays the altitude of the vehicle location.

› 【Atm. pres.】: it displays the atmospheric pressure of the vehicle location.

Conqueror perspective

After activating the conqueror perspective function, see the image under the engine compartment as the vehicle moves. This function can assist the driver to drive on more complicated roads.

After the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, this function will be automatically deactivated.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

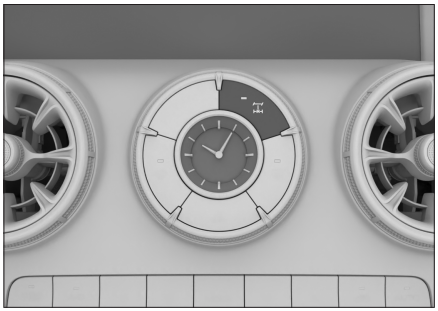
Differential lock introduction

When a drive wheel slips, the differential lock will ensure that the other drive wheel is still able to get enough torque to provide an enough driving force for the vehicle to get out of trouble.

CAUTION

- Do not modify the powertrain assembly and transmission system of the vehicle to avoid damage to the differential lock.
- Do not use the differential lock on a paved road.
- The differential lock is only used for the vehicle to get out of trouble, which shall be deactivated immediately after the vehicle is out of trouble.
- Control the vehicle carefully after the differential lock is locked. Emergency turning is not allowed, otherwise the stability of the vehicle will be seriously affected and the risk of accidents will be increased.

Rear axle electric differential lock



4EDA38C30EB1

Manual locking

NOTICE

It can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.
- Steering assist function is not activated.

Differential lock switch

After starting the engine, press the rear axle differential lock button ⌑. When the indicator light on this button turns on and the front axle differential lock indicator light ⌑ on the instrument panel turns on in green, the rear axle differential lock has been locked successfully.

⚠ WARNING

When the differential lock is locked, reduce large angle turning; otherwise, vehicle components may be damaged.

ℹ NOTICE

When the rear axle differential lock is unlocked, press the rear axle differential lock button ⌑. When the indicator light on this button flashes for a few seconds and then goes out, and the front axle differential lock indicator light ⌑ on the instrument panel flashes (yellow) for a few seconds and then goes out, the rear axle differential lock has failed to lock. Make sure that the conditions are met before operating.

Manual unlocking

When the rear axle differential lock is locked, press the rear axle differential lock button ⌑ again. When the indicator light on this button and the front axle differential lock indicator light ⌑ on the instrument panel go out, the rear axle differential lock has been unlocked successfully.

ℹ NOTICE

When it is difficult to unlock the vehicle, the steering wheel can be gently turned to the left and right to assist in unlocking.

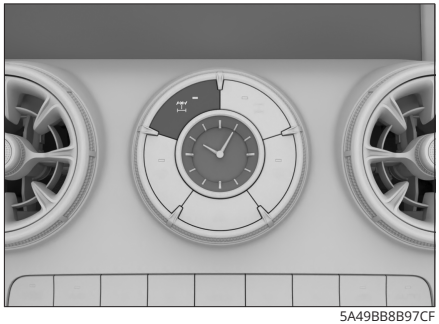
Overspeed warning

When the rear axle differential lock is locked, and the vehicle speed increases to 30 to 40 km/h, the indicator light ⌑ on the button flashes, and the rear axle differential lock indicator light ⌑ on the instrument panel flashes in green to prompt the driver to reduce the speed.

Automatic unlocking upon overspeed

When the rear axle differential lock is locked, and the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the rear axle differential lock will automatically unlock, and the indicator light on the button ⌑ and the rear axle differential lock indicator light ⌑ on the instrument panel go out.

Front axle electric differential lock



5A49BB8B97CF

Manual locking

NOTICE

It can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.
- The rear axle differential lock is locked.
- The driving mode is in 4L mode.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.

After starting the engine, press the front axle differential lock button. When the indicator light on this button turns on and the front axle differential lock indicator light on the instrument panel turns on in green, the front axle differential lock has been locked successfully.

WARNING

When the differential lock is locked, reduce large angle turning; otherwise, vehicle components may be damaged.

NOTICE

When the front axle differential lock is unlocked, press the front axle differential lock button. When the indicator light on this button flashes for a few seconds and then goes out and the front axle differential lock indicator light (yellow) on the instrument panel flashes for a few seconds and then goes out, the front axle differential lock has failed to lock. Make sure that the conditions are met before operating.

Manual unlocking

When the front axle differential lock is locked, it can be unlocked by means of the following methods, and the indicator light on the button and the front axle differential lock indicator light on the instrument panel go out after unlocking.

- Press the front axle differential lock button to unlock the front axle differential lock.
- Press the rear axle differential lock button, and the rear axle differential lock will be unlocked, and the front axle differential lock will also be unlocked.
- After the drive mode exits from 4L mode, the front axle differential lock will be unlocked.

NOTICE

When it is difficult to unlock the vehicle, the steering wheel can be gently turned to the left and right to assist in unlocking.

Overspeed warning

When the front axle differential lock is locked, and the vehicle speed increases to 30 to 40 km/h, the indicator light on the button flashes, and the front axle differential lock indicator light on the instrument panel flashes in green to prompt the driver to reduce the speed.

Automatic unlocking upon overspeed

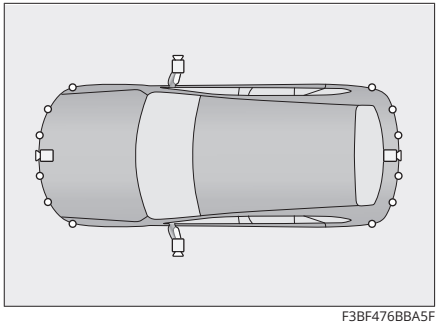
When the front axle differential lock is locked, and the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the front axle differential lock will automatically unlock, and the indicator light on the button and the front axle differential lock indicator light on the instrument panel go out.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Parking system sensor

The parking system detects traffic situations around the vehicle using cameras and radars, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to enhance safety and comfort while parking.



F3BF476BBA5F

Illustration	Description	Position
	Camera	On the front grille; On the tailgate; On the left and right side mirrors.
	Ultrasonic radars	On the front and rear bumpers

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle configuration, types and quantities of sensors may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

- The parking system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during parking or similar operations.
- There are blind spots to the coverage of the parking system, and obstacles in certain areas may not be detected. Therefore, during parking or similar operations, please make sure that there are no children or animals near the vehicle.

› Modifications to the vehicle are strictly prohibited. If modifications are made to components like the suspension, tyres, bumpers, or lights, they may affect the vehicle's dynamics, braking performance, sensor detection range, and perception of ambient lighting conditions, resulting in the parking function failing to operate normally.

⚠ CAUTION

› When reversing, confirm that the tailgate is fully closed.

› Do not knock on the camera and the radar.

› Do not use high-pressure water jets to directly spray cameras or radars. Otherwise, water may result in system failure or fire.

› Do not use rough or sharp materials to clean the camera or radar. Please wipe with a soft cloth or wash with water (low water pressure) to clean the surfaces of the camera or radar.

ℹ NOTICE

When the parking system is working, affected by the characteristics of radar, the following situations may cause the parking system to be less effective in recognizing or not recognizing obstacles, resulting in damage to the vehicle, including but not limited to:

› There are objects that are in the blind spot of radar detection, such as short objects, objects under bumpers, and objects that are too close or too far from the vehicle.

› There are hanging objects that cannot be detected, e.g. fire boxes, vehicle spare tyre, rear of trucks.

› There are ultrasonic noises with the same frequency around, for example, metal noise, high-pressure gas emission noise, or a car horn directed at the sensor.

› The obstacle is a wire net, a fence, a thin post, a rope, a shopping cart, a two-wheeled vehicle, or other thin objects that cannot reflect effective sound waves.

› The obstacle is snow, cotton or other substances of which the surface can easily absorb sound waves.

› The obstacle is an object whose surface does not reflect the detection signal or a person wearing such clothing.

› The obstacle is a cone-shaped object or an object with an inclined surface.

› The obstacle is a right-angle object such as a corner of a wall or the rear of a vehicle.

› The vehicle is parked on grassy or bumpy roads.

› The license plate is bent or tilting, or a large license plate or license plate decorative frame is installed.

- The radar is damaged, misaligned, or obscured by foreign objects (e.g. paint protective film).
- To ensure the normal operation of the system, keep the sensor clean and free of snow and ice.

NOTICE

Cameras also have certain limitations. The following conditions may affect the normal operation of the parking system, including but not limited to:

- The left and right side mirrors or the front and rear cameras are damaged, resulting in the cameras not working or misaligned.
- The camera is dirty or blocked.
- The ambient brightness is too bright, for example, the camera is exposed to direct sunlight.
- The ambient brightness is too dark, for example, a basement without lighting or at night.
- The ambient brightness changes greatly and is inconsistent, for example, mottled tree shadows and reflective floor paint parking spaces.
- The parking line is not clear or the colour contrast between the parking line and the parking space is not obvious, for example, the floor tile/ grass brick parking space.
- There are unconventional parking spaces, for example, trapezoidal parking spaces with inconsistent front and rear widths or curved parking spaces in parking buildings.
- There are round or square pillars next to the parking spaces.
- Obstacles partially intrude into or cling to the parking spaces.
- The system may not be able to judge and exclude parking spaces with no-parking markings, cones, restricted-stop signs, ground locks, or special parking spaces.
- The system may not be able to exclude parking spaces with obstacles, for example, bicycles, tricycles, low debris, bricks, etc.

Parking settings

You can set the related functions of the parking system through the【Car】→【Park】interface on the multimedia display screen. Refer to the actual vehicle for specific setting items.

Activate front obstacle 360 surround view

After the function is activated, if the moving speed is less than 10 km/h and an obstacle is detected within the detection range, the front radar and AVM system will be automatically activated. If the vehicle stops approaching the obstacle within a certain period of time, or the vehicle is moving away from the obstacle, or the vehicle applies the parking brake, the system will be automatically deactivated.

Steering surround view activated

With the function activated and the D gear position engaged at a low speed, turn on the turn signal light or turn the steering wheel to a certain angle, and the AVM will be automatically activated. When the steering wheel is straightened and the turn signal lights are turned off, or when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, the AVM will be automatically deactivated.

After activating the 【Steering surround view activated】 function, you can set the display mode of the AVM window.

- 【Surround view in small screen】: the pop-up AVM interface is displayed in small screen. You can drag the window to the left or right of the display as needed.
- 【Surround view in full screen】: the pop-up AVM interface is displayed in full screen.

Surround view deactivation

The AVM will be automatically deactivated when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.

Manoeuvre emergency braking

After this function is activated, the manoeuvre emergency braking indicator light (green) on the AVM interface turns on when the vehicle is driving at a low speed, indicating that the function is normally activated. At this point, if an obstacle is detected and a collision risk is determined, the system will assist with emergency braking to reduce the risk of collision. In this case, the manoeuvre emergency braking indicator light (red) will turn on.

CAUTION

- The function is only an auxiliary one and cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please deactivate the manoeuvre emergency braking function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

› Please deactivate the manoeuvre emergency braking function after the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch or when the vehicle is towing another vehicle. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

Activate 360 surround view

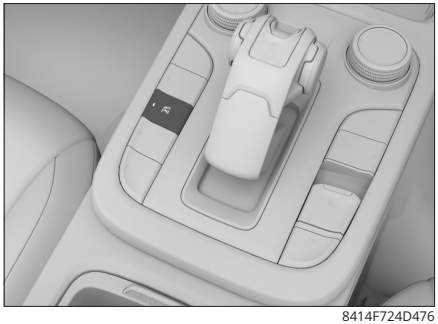
Touch this button to activate the AVM function.

Collision avoidance radar

System description

A collision avoidance radar is a radar detection device. During parking, sensors detect obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle, measure the distance to these obstacles, and give sound prompts to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Instructions



8414F724D476

› Set the power supply to the ON mode or start the engine, and then press the button to manually turn on or off the collision avoidance radar.

› Shift to the R gear position, and the collision avoidance radar automatically turns on.

› Shift to the P gear position, and the collision avoidance radar automatically turns off.

› If the driving speed exceeds 15 km/h, the collision avoidance radar will automatically turn off.

Detection scope and warning mode

Radar sensor position	Detection scope [m]
Front on both sides	0.6
Front centre	1.0
Rear on both sides	0.6
Rear centre	1.5

After the collision avoidance radar is activated, if the sensor detects obstacles within the detection range, it will start to give a warning.

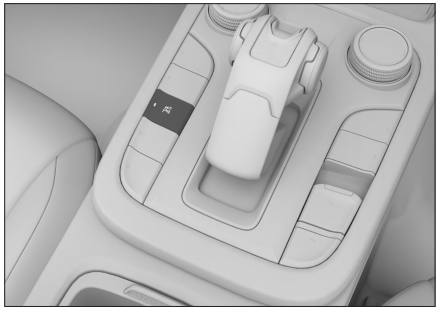
As the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle shortens, the frequency of the alarm sound will gradually increase. When the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle is within approximately 0.5 m, a long alarm will be sounded and the vehicle must not continue to run at this time in order to avoid a collision.

Around view monitor (AVM)

System description

The AVM uses four cameras to capture images surrounding the vehicle and sends the video signal to the display screen for display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions



8414F724D476

- After setting the power supply to ON mode or starting the engine, press the button to turn on or off the AVM.
- Shift to the R gear position, and the AVM is automatically activated.
- Shift to the P gear position, and the AVM is automatically deactivated.
- The AVM will be automatically deactivated when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

  You can make settings through the 【Car】→【Park】→【Surround view deactivation】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Interface introduction

In the AVM interface, you can activate or deactivate the following functions:

- P: parking assist Touch this button to activate the parking assist function.
- : reverse tracking. Touch this button to activate the reverse tracking function.
- : 2D mode, : 3D mode. Touch this button to switch between view modes.
- : clear chassis. Touch this button to activate or deactivate the clear chassis function.

  After the clear chassis function is activated, as the vehicle moves, the AVM interface gradually displays images of the road conditions below the vehicle.

NOTICE

The clear chassis function is not real-time, and the AVM interface does not fully reflect the environment under the vehicle. The driver must independently assess external conditions and must not rely solely on this function.

- : assist view, : wheel view, track view. Touch this button to switch between view modes.
- : smart view. Touch this button to activate or deactivate the smart view function.

When the vehicle is in the D gear position, if the front radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, the system will automatically switch to the front top view.

When the vehicle is in the R gear position, if the rear radar detects an obstacle less than or equal to 1 m from the vehicle body, the system will automatically switch to the rear top view.

It will automatically switch to the previous image after the obstacle is removed.

› : radar alarm activated, : radar alarm deactivated. Touch this button to activate or deactivate the radar alarm.

Auto view switching

When the D gear position is engaged, the system will automatically switch to the front view image; when the R gear position is engaged, the system will automatically switch to the rear view image; when the D gear position is engaged, turn on the turn signal light, and the image area will automatically switch to the corresponding wheel image.

Manual view switching

When the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, you can switch between views manually.

When the 2D mode is enabled, touch the surrounding area of the vehicle in the top view to access the corresponding single view.

In the 3D view mode, touch the top view area, and the top view will display the direction buttons. Touch the button indicating each direction, and the image area will display the view image corresponding to this button.

Parking assist

System description

Based on the AVM and the collision avoidance radar system, the parking assist function uses radar sensors and cameras to detect vehicle surrounding obstacles, parking lines and other information to identify suitable parking space and assist in controlling the vehicle to complete steering, shifting, and braking operations. The driver only needs to follow the system prompts to park or exit the parking space.

During the parking, if moving obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will assist in performing emergency braking to quickly complete vehicle braking. If a fixed obstacle is detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will perform comfortable braking to ensure smooth vehicle deceleration.

⚠ WARNING

The system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During parking, the driver must observe the surroundings and parking prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

ℹ NOTICE

Before activating the parking assist function, ensure that the all-terrain control system is set to normal, ECO or sport mode. The parking assist function is not available in other modes.

Parking into the parking space

1. When the vehicle enters the parking lot, touch the parking assist button P in the AVM interface and search for a parking space based on the system's prompts.
2. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, select an appropriate parking space, touch the 【Start parking】 button, and release the brake pedal according to the system's prompts to activate the parking-in function.

ℹ NOTICE

› When searching for a parking space, keep a proper distance (about 0.5 to 1.5 m) from vehicles or obstacles on both sides. Otherwise, the system may not be able to identify the parking space.

› After touching the 【Start parking】 button, confirm the system's audible prompt before releasing the brake pedal. Failure to do so may result in unintended vehicle rolling.

Parking out

1. Start the vehicle. When the vehicle is in the parking space and stationary, touch the parking assist button P in the AVM interface to activate the parking assist function.
2. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, select the parking-out direction, touch the 【Start parking】 button, and release the brake pedal according to the system's prompts. The system will assist the vehicle in moving out of the parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

› The parking-out function can only be activated when the vehicle is stationary.

› After touching the 【Start parking】 button, confirm the system's audible prompt before releasing the brake pedal. Failure to do so may result in unintended vehicle rolling.

Precautions

During parking, the following situations may temporarily interrupt the parking, and parking can continue once the interruption disappears:

› Open the vehicle doors (including the tailgate).

› Fold the side mirrors.

› Release the driver seat belt.

› Obstacles appear on the parking track.

› Interfere with the accelerator pedal.

During parking, the following conditions may cause the parking assist function to exit:

› The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h while searching for a parking space.

› Interfere with the gear position, steering wheel or parking brake.

› There is resumable interruption time-out, excessive interruption times, excessive parking movement times, or total parking duration time-out.

› When you exit from the parking space, the system judges that there is no parking-out direction or the road is clear, and there is no need to use the parking assist function.

› The ground slope where the vehicle is parked is too steep.

The system cannot be applicable to all parking scenario applications, and the expected functions may not be achieved in some special situations. The following situations are just examples and do not include all special situations:

› The parking line cannot be clearly identified due to the influence of the surrounding environment. For example, the parking line is polluted or covered by massive garbage, weeds, mud, etc., or the surrounding light source has low illumination, and the surface of the parking space has a large reflectivity.

› There are bumps on the surface of the parking space, and the opposite parking line cannot be detected.

› There are pits on the ground of the parking line.

› The front or rear vehicle is too close to the unoccupied parking space, or occupies part of the unoccupied parking space.

› There are pedestrians or other obstacles in the parking space.

› Pedestrians and other obstacles stay near the camera when the vehicle is stationary.

› Previous parking lines can be seen in the parking space.

› The parking space is in a corner or on a bend.

- Vehicle tyres are severely worn, or unapproved tyres (including non-full-size spare tyres) are fitted.
- Using this function on uneven grounds (such as weeds, gravel roads, etc.) may cause system recognition errors and unnecessary braking.
- External sound sources may cause interference with the system, leading to incorrect sensor identification and potential false reporting of non-existent obstacles.
- The sensor is smudged or covered.
- There is heavy fog or rain or snow.

Cases in which parking assist function is forbidden:

- Tyre chains are installed.
- Items loaded exceed the vehicle size.
- The tow hook is installed.
- The ground slope where the vehicle is parked is too steep.
- The road surface has large pits or cavities.

Reverse tracking

System description

When the vehicle is in D gear and travelling at a speed of 30 km/h or less, the system records the last 50 m of the route in real time. When the reverse tracking function is activated, the system assists in controlling the steering wheel, brakes, and vehicle speed to complete reversing along the recorded route.

During reversing, if pedestrians, vehicles, or other non-fixed obstacles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will assist in emergency braking to quickly stop the vehicle.

NOTICE

Due to mechanical deviation, tyre pressure, and other factors affecting system control accuracy, there will be some deviation in the reversing path. Therefore, a complete return along the original path cannot be guaranteed.

WARNING

The function is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During reversing, the driver should observe the surroundings and reversing prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

Instructions

After starting the vehicle, touch the reverse tracking button on the AVM (Around View Monitor) interface to activate the reverse tracking function.

Follow the prompts on the multimedia display screen to complete assisted reversing after activating the reverse tracking function.

CAUTION

- Before activating the reverse tracking function, ensure that the all-terrain control system is in standard, ECO or sport mode. The reverse tracking function is unavailable in other modes.
- When using the reverse tracking function, monitor the vehicle's surroundings at all times to ensure parking safety. Brake and control the vehicle in time if there is a risk of collision.

Precautions

When the following situations occur, the system will stop and the recorded route will be cleared:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- The engine stalls abnormally.
- The angle of rotation of the steering wheel is too large.
- The automatic reverse deviates from the recorded route by about 1 m.

During reversing, the following conditions will interrupt or deactivate the reverse tracking function:

- Touch the reverse tracking button .
- Interfere with or operate the gear position, steering wheel, parking brake or accelerator pedal.
- Release the driver seat belt.
- Open the vehicle doors (including the tailgate).
- Fold the side mirrors.
- The system detects that the vehicle cannot continue driving.
- Obstacles are detected on the driving track.

NOTICE

After the reverse tracking function is interrupted and deactivated due to non-system failure, activate it again, and the system can control the vehicle to complete reversing along the remaining path.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre pressure monitoring system introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tyre pressure and temperature in real time and alerts the driver to take appropriate actions to avoid an accident when an abnormality occurs in the tyre.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

CAUTION

› Tyre repair methods such as using tyre sealant (except for the tyre sealant provided by authorised service centre), carburettor cleaning agent, and inflater may damage the tyre pressure sensor and cause the TPMS to fail to work normally.

› If the replaced tyre is not a genuine spare part, the TPMS may not work properly.

› The tyre pressure sensor is installed near the tyre internal valve. When repairing or replacing the tyre, please contact the authorised service centre for handling to avoid incorrect operation damaging the tyre pressure sensor and causing the TPMS to fail to work normally.

› The TPMS may not work properly when the tyre chain is installed or the wheel is covered.

› The TPMS may not work properly due to radio interference.

› After replacing a faulty tyre, it is recommended to promptly repair the faulty tyre and complete the tyre pressure sensor programming learning. Installing the faulty tyre on the vehicle may cause abnormal TPMS display.

NOTICE

› The TPMS cannot be a substitute for regular tyre maintenance. Check the tyre frequently to ensure proper tyre pressure, even if no alarm is received from the TPMS.

› Tyre pressure can be affected by factors such as the heat generated from vehicle operations, external environment, and journey time. Typically, a fluctuation of around 30 kPa in tyre pressure is normal.

› The TPMS is unable to monitor the spare tyre pressure.

Self-learning function

Automatically update data through the self-learning function after tyre replacement or tyre rotation.

After stopping the vehicle for more than 16 minutes, start the vehicle and drive at a speed higher than 30 km/h for about 9 minutes. The system will automatically complete tyre pressure learning and positioning.

If self-learning fails, please contact the authorised service centre as soon as possible and reset the TPMS.

Tyre pressure monitoring and alert

Press the homepage button ⌂ on the steering wheel to switch the instrument panel to the driving data interface. Press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to show the tyre pressure monitoring interface which allows you to view the pressure and temperature information of the four tyres in use.

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the instrument panel will provide following warning:

› The warning interface will be displayed on the multi-information display. The abnormal tyre icon becomes yellow, and an audible alert is given.

NOTICE

Due to different software versions, the abnormal tyre alarm of some models may be red. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

› On the instrument panel, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light (!) turns on.

If there is a warning message about tyres during driving, avoid sharp steering or harsh braking. Reduce your speed, drive to a safe location and park your vehicle as soon as possible. Then contact the authorised service centre for maintenance.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction of fatigue driving reminder

The fatigue driving reminder system identifies the driver's fatigue level by continuously detecting the driver's operation of the vehicle. If the system recognizes that driver is fatigue, sound and visual alarms will be given to alert the driver to drive with care.

⚠ WARNING

› Fatigue driving is strictly prohibited.
Reasonable parking intervals should always be arranged for long-distance driving to ensure adequate rest.

› It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that he/she is in a good driving condition.

› Fatigue driving warning function is only an auxiliary tool and may not be able to actually monitor driver fatigue. In some cases, the system may judge normal driving behavior as fatigue.

Instructions

You can activate or deactivate the fatigued driving reminder function through the【Car】→【Drive】interface on the multimedia display screen.

Fatigue warning

When the system monitors the following conditions, the instrument panel displays a warning interface, accompanied by an audible alert.

› When the driver side seat belt is fastened and the speed exceeds 65 km/h, the system detects that the driver is driving in a fatigued state.

› The vehicle has been driven (after starting) for 4 consecutive hours.

⚠ WARNING

› While the vehicle speed remains less than 65 km/h, the system will not activate the warning even if the driver shows signs of fatigue.

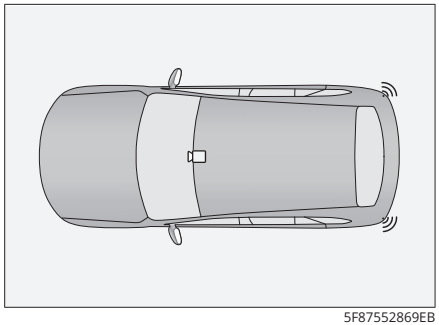
- In some situations, the driver's abilities may remain unaffected even when fatigued. In such circumstances, the system will not issue a warning to the driver. For this reason, when the driver shows signs of fatigue, stop the vehicle and rest timely, regardless of whether the driver monitor system has issued a warning.
- This feature cannot be used to loosen driving restrictions. Regular stops must be arranged during the long driving for adequate rest.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driver assist system sensor

The driver assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using cameras and radar sensors, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to enhance safety and comfort while driving.



5F87552869EB

Illustration	Description	Position
	Camera	Near the base of the interior rear-view mirror
	Millimetre wave radar	Inside the rear bumper

NOTICE

The types and quantities of sensors may vary depending on the vehicle models. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

- The driver assist system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must always concentrate on careful driving.
- When the vehicle has towing equipment installed or is towing another vehicle, the driver assist system cannot work properly, so deactivate the related functions of the driver assist system.

About the camera

The camera is used to identify lane markings, traffic signs, targets around the vehicle, etc., providing relevant information for the driver assist system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to disassemble or modify the camera without permission.
- When the camera does not work properly, the functions relying on the camera to provide lane markings, traffic signs and target information will be limited.
- The camera has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the limit range.
- When the camera fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre promptly for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors can affect the performance of the camera, leading to degradation, delays, or errors in detection. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- Poor lighting conditions at night;
- Weather conditions (such as rain, snow and fog) with poor visibility;
- A situation in which a vehicle wobbles due to an undulating or uneven road;
- A situation where the ambient light changes sharply;
- A situation where a strong light shines directly on the camera;
- Deformed or damaged windscreen, causing the incorrect camera installation position and angle;
- Complex intersections;
- Too high or too low ambient temperature;
- A situation where the camera is covered with a foreign object;
- Short following distance and blocked camera;
- A situation where a guardrail, an elevated road or a tree casts a shadow on a road;
- Poor tunnel light;
- A situation of passing a narrow bend, a sharp turn or a narrow road (such as a motorcycle lane).
- Unclear lane boundaries.

NOTICE

When the instrument panel indicates that the system sensor detection is restricted, check and ensure the camera and its surroundings are clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.

About the millimetre wave radar

The millimetre wave radar is used to detect the targets around the vehicle, providing relevant information for the driver assist system.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid limiting the detection performance of the millimetre wave radar, never paint or modify the bumper without permission.
- When the millimetre wave radar cannot work normally, the functions relying on it for detection information will be limited.
- The millimetre wave radar has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the limit range.
- When the millimetre wave radar fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre promptly for repair or replacement.

⚠ WARNING

Many factors can affect the performance of the millimetre wave radar, leading to degradation, delays, or errors in detection. These factors include but are not limited to:

- Severe weather (e.g. fog, haze, rain, snow and dust storm);
- Foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar or bumper;
- Misaligned or blocked millimetre wave radar;
- The impact on the area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper due to vehicle collisions, scratches, and other accidents;
- Too small volume of the detected object;
- Interference by electromagnetic waves of the same frequency;
- The millimetre wave radar temperature is out of the working range due to the vehicle being in a high temperature or extremely cold environment.

ℹ NOTICE

To ensure the normal operation of the millimetre wave radar, keep the area around it and the bumper clean and free from foreign objects such as ice, snow, and dust.

When you notice a foreign object attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water.

- Do not use a high-pressure washer to flush the millimetre wave radar.
- Do not use sharp or abrasive objects for cleaning.
- Do not use chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners.

ℹ NOTICE

- This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

› The electromagnetic field intensity of this communication device conforms to the Safety Standard for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields published by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Front assist system

You can set the functions related to the forward assist through 【Car】 → 【Smart drive】 → 【Forward assist】 on the multimedia display screen.

The forward assist system identifies vehicles on the lane via a camera on the front windscreen. Upon detecting a collision risk ahead, the system will sound a warning or take corrective measures to mitigate the risk of collision.

⚠ WARNING

This system may not function as expected in all situations. Driving the vehicle towards pedestrians, animals, or other vehicles for the purpose of testing the system is strictly prohibited, as this may result in serious injury or death.

ℹ NOTICE

› In complex driving conditions, the system may apply unnecessary braking. This may occur in locations such as construction sites, near railway tracks, or when water is sprayed or splashed in front of the vehicle.

› This system may not work or may not work properly in low-visibility situations (such as rain, snow or fog, or at night).

› When you are driving or washing the vehicle in a harsh environment, the sensor may be blocked by water or debris, causing the system to fail to work normally. Please clean the sensor and its surrounding areas promptly.

Auto emergency braking (AEB)

The auto emergency braking system includes the front collision warning system and the braking assist function.

When driving forwards, this function will detect the risk of collision between your vehicle and pedestrians, cyclists, and vehicles (most stationary vehicles or the vehicles driving in the same direction in the same lane as your vehicle) ahead in a limited range, and actively send visual warnings and audible alarms, as well as try to actively brake to reduce driving speed, minimizing the impact of forward collisions and enhancing vehicle safety.

› Off: the auto emergency braking function is deactivated.

› Brake: the auto emergency braking function is activated.

Front collision warning

When the vehicle speed is within the system working range, the system will issue visual warnings and audible alarms to remind the driver to take safe driving measures in time if it detects a pedestrian or vehicle and determines that there is a risk of a collision.

Alert messages include:

› Images and texts on the instrument panel.

› Audible warnings.

› Sudden braking.

Brake assist

When the vehicle speed is within the system working range, the system will control the vehicle to perform emergency braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or a vehicle and that the driver does not take safe driving measures within a limited range. However, if a collision is inevitable, the system will minimize the vehicle speed to avoid collisions, and will send out images and audible alarms to alert the driver. The hazard warning lights will also flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, reducing the risk of a rear-end collision.

Brake assist can also address the potential risks to a certain extent when the vehicle is turning at a crossroad. With your vehicle speed within the system working range when the vehicle is making a turn at a road junction, the system will control the vehicle to automatically perform braking to avoid collisions to the greatest extent if it detects that there is a collision risk with a pedestrian or an oncoming vehicle within a limited range. The vehicle will send images and audible alarms to remind the driver. The hazard warning lights will also flash quickly to remind the rear vehicles, reducing the risk of a rear-end collision. The system is able to detect pedestrians and vehicles (passenger cars, lorries, buses etc.) moving in the opposite direction to your vehicle.

When the system is working, the following warning messages will be issued:

› Images and texts on the instrument panel.

› Audible warnings.

⚠ WARNING

› The working range of the auto emergency braking system is about 5 to 150 km/h.

- The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function. For safety reasons, drivers are strictly prohibited from consciously driving to pedestrians, cyclists, or vehicles to test the auto emergency braking function.
- The auto emergency braking system is an emergency collision assist function, which is not designed to completely prevent collisions. The system only minimises the impact of a forward collision by trying to reduce the driving speed within a limited range when the vehicle is at risk of an emergency collision. Please do not rely excessively on the auto emergency braking system to avoid serious personal injury and property damage.
- The auto emergency braking system is limited by several factors and cannot be a substitute for the driver's accurate braking. Meanwhile, the system may not function accurately under all driving conditions, including various states, environments, weather, and road situations. It could trigger unnecessary warnings or braking, or fail to issue warnings and apply brakes when needed. Therefore, always remain fully attentive while driving and be prepared to take manual braking or steering actions to avoid collisions. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or minimise their impact.
- The auto emergency braking system cannot be a substitute for maintaining a safe driving distance between your vehicle and a pedestrian, cyclist, and vehicle in front. Please avoid driving too closely to the above targets or engaging in aggressive driving behaviour.
- When the auto emergency braking system is disabled, the vehicle will not warn or perform braking even if it detects potential hazards. It is recommended that you do not deactivate this function. This function will restart after the vehicle is powered on again.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may result in the auto emergency braking system to fail to brake, interrupt braking, or reduce braking capacity, including but not limited to the following:

- The R gear position is engaged.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is not activated or is limited.
- The brake function cannot fully work (supercooled, overheated and wet brake parts, improper vehicle maintenance, excessive brake or tyre wear, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.).
- The sensor detection is limited or malfunctioning (e.g., sensor sheltered, and surface dirty).
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- The front doors are not closed.
- The driver is already braking.
- The driver depresses hard or urgently on the accelerator pedal.
- The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.
- The driver turns on the turn signal light incorrectly in the case of the failure to comply with the traffic regulations when turning at a crossroad.
- The auto emergency braking cannot be activated again within about 20 seconds after activation.
- No vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians are detected ahead.
- The vehicle is driving on snow-covered, slippery, gravel or desert roads.

⚠ WARNING

- The auto emergency braking system may not completely bring the speed to a standstill when it is activated. Please be prepared to take control of the vehicle at any time if the system interrupts braking.
- If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal or intervenes by steering during emergency braking, the system will exit the emergency braking function. The driver should be ready to take control of the vehicle at any time.
- During auto emergency braking, the brake pedal will quickly go down. Please do not place your foot under the brake pedal to prevent injury, or place anything under the brake pedal to affect braking.

- When the auto emergency braking system is activated, if the vehicle speed is low, the system will be able to reduce the speed until it comes to a complete stop so as to avoid a potential collision, but it will not keep the vehicle stationary continuously. Now the driver should actively apply the brakes. If the vehicle is stationary, the system will activate the electronic parking brake to stabilize the vehicle when it stops. To continue driving, release the electronic parking brake, or depress the accelerator pedal firmly or actively turn the steering wheel.
- The warning function of the auto emergency braking system is for the driver's reference only and cannot be a substitute for the driver's own attention and judgement. When the system emits visual texts, images, and sounds, please take immediate collision avoidance measures to remove potential risks. Do not rely on the auto emergency braking system to intervene in braking the vehicle.
- The auto emergency braking system only assists you in safe driving. If the system is affected by several factors, please keep yourself focused, abide by the current traffic laws and regulations, and drive safely. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving.

⚠ WARNING

The operations below may cause the auto emergency braking system to fail to give an alarm or interrupt an alarm, including but not limited to the following:

- The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm when the driver is already braking.
- The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver steps on the accelerator pedal deeply or sharply.
- The auto emergency braking system may fail to sound an alarm or interrupt an alarm when the driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

⚠ WARNING

The auto emergency braking system function may be limited, and the targets that make the auto emergency braking system function limited or inoperative include but are not limited to:

- Oncoming vehicles and motorcycles.
- Crossing vehicles and motorcycles.
- Vehicles and motorcycles parked horizontally, obliquely, or opposite.
- Special-shaped vehicles (tractors, mud trucks, etc.).

- Unconventional small wheeled vehicles (strollers, suitcases, shopping carts, wheelchairs, etc.).
- Unusual means of transportation (carriages, ox carts, etc.).
- Traffic lights, warning signs, and roadblocks (cone barrels, etc.).
- Trash bins, cartons, and parcels.
- Walls, stones, and road edges.
- Flying or falling objects.
- Animals.
- Other non-vehicle objects.

⚠ WARNING

The associated camera that the auto emergency braking system relies on has limited detection capability, which may result in unnecessary or missed warnings or braking, including but not limited to the followings:

- The system may not recognise stationary targets at high vehicle speeds.
- A vehicle (especially a bus, truck, etc.) closely cuts in front of your vehicle.
- The targets are partially blocked by obstacles, pedestrians, vehicles or other objects, etc.
- A vehicle is driving on a slippery, winding, or hilly road.
- The vehicles with trailers, tractors, mud trucks, and special-shaped vehicles appear in front.
- The front windscreen area within the camera's field of view is blocked by dirt, tags, etc.
- The visibility is limited by weather conditions (fog, haze, rain, snow, dust storm weather, etc.)
- A vehicle is driving in a dark surrounding area (at dawn or dusk, at night, driving in a tunnel, etc.)
- The detected target colour is almost the same as the surrounding environment colour.
- Strong light may shine on the camera, or the intensity of light changes abruptly.
- There are sudden changes in ambient brightness (strong light, backlighting, etc., when entering and exiting the entrance and exit of the tunnel).
- Other cameras have limited detection capabilities.

⚠ WARNING

The above warnings, reminders and restrictions do not cover all the conditions that may affect the normal working of the auto emergency braking system. More factors can interfere with the auto emergency braking system. Drivers need to concentrate on staying focused, constantly pay attention to the traffic environment, always be ready to take collision avoidance measures and drive safely. Do not rely solely on the auto emergency braking system to avoid collisions or minimise their impact.

Front collision warning sensitivity

- Low: the system will give a warning when your vehicle is close to pedestrians or vehicles ahead.
- Normal: the system will give a warning when the distance between your vehicle and pedestrians or vehicles ahead is set to the normal value by the system.
- High: the system will give a warning when your vehicle is far from pedestrians or vehicles ahead.

Intelligent turning

You can activate or deactivate the intelligent turning function.

After this function is activated, if the vehicle enters a curve at a high speed while cruising, the intelligent turning function will appropriately reduce the speed.

⚠ WARNING

- When entering or exiting a curve or driving in a curve, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead at the same lane timely, which could result in late braking. The driver must remain alert and ready to take control of the vehicle at all times.
- During driving through a curve, the system may mistakenly detect vehicles in other lanes, causing unnecessary braking.
- Driving on roads with sharp turns (such as serpentine roads or those with continuous tight bends) may exceed the system's cornering capability, potentially causing the vehicle to suddenly accelerate or deviate from its lane. Therefore, the driver needs to constantly pay attention to the surrounding environment and keep both hands on the steering wheel to drive cautiously.

Rear side assist system

You can set the functions related to rear side assist through the 【Car】→【Intelligent Driving】→【Rear Side Assist】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

The rear side assist system can detect vehicles behind your vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue a warning to remind the driver to drive safely.

NOTICE

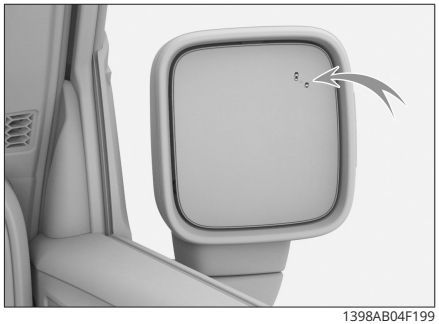
- Keep both sides of the rear bumper clean. Do not attach any objects, and ensure that no foreign materials such as ice, snow, or mud cover the sensors, as this may affect their normal operation.
- Improper repair or modification of the vehicle may cause the sensors to become misaligned, which can affect the proper operation of the rear side assist system. Therefore, it is recommended that you maintain and repair your vehicle at the authorised service centre.
- Turn off the side assist system when towing another vehicle.

WARNING

In some cases, it may not work properly or even not work. For example:

- For stationary targets (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.).
- Driving in adverse conditions such as rain, and snow.
- Driving on sharp turns, slopes, very wide or narrow lanes.

Warning lights



1398AB04F199

The warning lights are located on the surfaces of the left and right side mirrors.

CAUTION

Do not paste any objects on the warning lights to avoid affecting the system warning function.

Lane change assist

During driving (with the vehicle speed above 12 km/h), when the system detects a vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors or an approaching vehicle in the rear of the adjacent lane, the warning lights on the corresponding side will go on. If you turn on the turn signal light at the same side at this time, the warning light will flash and an audible alarm will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue changing the lane.

Door open warning

When the system detects that there are approaching vehicles and bicycles and other targets in the adjacent lanes on both sides after the vehicle stops and that there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the warning light at the corresponding side will go on. If the passenger continues to open the door at this time, the warning light will flash accompanied by an audible alarm, prompting you that it is dangerous to continue to open the door.

The door open warning system will only function in the following conditions:

- The vehicle power supply is in ON mode.
- It is within 3 minutes of switching the power supply mode from ON to OFF mode.

NOTICE

When the power saving delay function setting value is less than 3 minutes, it will be executed according to the power saving delay setting.

Rear collision warning

When the system detects that there is a fast approaching vehicle behind your vehicle and that there is a risk of collision, the left and right turn signal lights will flash quickly, accompanied by an audible alarm, prompting the driver that a dangerous target is approaching, and warning the driver of rear vehicle to drive safely.

Rear cross traffic alert/braking

When the rear cross traffic alert function is activated, if during reversing the system detects that there is a risk of collision with a moving vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors, it will give a warning to remind the driver to drive safely.

When the rear cross traffic braking function is activated, limited braking can be applied when there is a risk in reversing to reduce the risk of collision.

NOTICE

Start the vehicle and shift to the R gear position, and the rear cross traffic assist function is working.

⚠ CAUTION

The reverse side assist function is limited in some cases. For example,

- There are obstacles blocking. The system cannot detect the objects behind other parked vehicles or obstacles.
- The current vehicle speed is too high or too low.
- The driver depresses the accelerator pedal firmly.
- The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

Lane assist system

You can set the lane assist function through 【Car】→【Smart drive】→【Lane assist】 on the multimedia display screen.

The lane assist system is designed for vehicles driving on highways and other well-maintained roads. It can identify lane boundaries via a camera on the front windscreen and alert drivers to correct their route if they unconsciously deviate from their lane. Also, it even assists the driver in correcting the direction to mitigate accident consequences with some of its functions.

⚠ CAUTION

The lane assist system operates correctly only when the lane boundaries are clearly visible. In some situations, the system may not function correctly or may be inactive. For example:

- Lane boundaries are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- There are objects on the road that affect the identification of lane boundaries (water, cracks, ruts, text signs, crosswalks, bumps or pits, etc.).
- There is low visibility (such as in rain, snow, fog, haze, or at night).
- The vehicle is strongly affected by crosswinds.
- The lanes merge or separate.
- Strong light may shine on the camera, or the light intensity may change abruptly.
- The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged, or obscured.
- The vehicle is running on a sharp turn, a narrow road (such as a motorcycle lane), or a road prone to rollover.
- The vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle, hindering the camera's detection range.

NOTICE

If you turn on the turn signal light, actively rotate the steering wheel, depress the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal before passing a lane boundary, the system will not intervene. In this case, the system considers that you are actively driving the vehicle.

NOTICE

When the driver controls the steering wheel with minimal force, the system may not detect the driver's hand holding the steering wheel and the instrument panel will send a warning message.

Lane assist function

After activating the lane assist function, you can select the assist modes.

- Warning assist: it can warn the driver to drive safely when the driver deviates from the lane unconsciously.
- Lane keep assist: it can assist the driver in correcting the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in the lane when the driver deviates from the lane unconsciously. If the correction fails, the system will sound a warning to alert the driver to drive safely.

NOTICE

The lane assist function can only work when the vehicle speed is between 60 and 150 km/h.

When the lane assist function is activated, the lane boundaries will be displayed on the instrument panel.

- Not displayed: it indicates that the system has not detected a lane boundary.
- Grey: it indicates that the system has detected a lane boundary.
- Green: it indicates that the system is correcting the steering wheel.
- Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds a warning. The driver needs to correct the direction promptly and return to the lane.

NOTICE

The lane centring assist functions only when the system identifies the lane boundaries on the left and right sides.

Emergency lane keeping

When the emergency lane keeping function is activated, the system will more actively correct the steering wheel in an emergency to reduce the risk of collision. For example: when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane or turns on the turn signal to change lanes, if there is a risk of collision with oncoming vehicles in the adjacent lane or vehicles approaching from behind in the same direction, or if there is a road shoulder or a pothole outside the lane.

NOTICE

The emergency lane keeping function can only work when the vehicle speed is between 60 and 150 km/h.

WARNING

In some cases, the emergency lane keeping function may not operate correctly or may be inactive. For example:

- For smaller targets (motorcycles, bicycles, etc.).
- For stationary targets.
- The current vehicle is driving too close to the preceding vehicle, preventing the camera from detecting it.
- The rear vehicle is driving too close to the current vehicle, preventing the sensor from detecting it.

Smart avoidance function

After the smart avoidance function is activated, when the lane center keeping function or intelligent cruise control assist mode is enabled and working, and the system detects that your vehicle is moving faster than a large vehicle (wagon, truck, bus, etc.) in the adjacent lane, it will control your vehicle to move slightly away from the large vehicle. After overtaking the large vehicle, your vehicle will return to the central area of the current lane.

NOTICE

The smart avoidance function can only operate when the vehicle speed is between 60 and 140 km/h.

CAUTION

The following situations may not activate the smart dodge function:

- The system detects a large vehicle in one adjacent lane and a vehicle in the other adjacent lane or a shoulder on the other side.
- The vehicle is driving in severe weather conditions, such as at night, in heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- The vehicle is in a curve.

Warning mode

There are three warning modes: sound, vibra and both.

Warning sensitivity

Warning sensitivity is divided into three levels: low, normal, and high.

Traffic sign information

You can set the functions related to traffic signs through the 【Car】→【Smart drive】→【Traffic signs】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

This function recognises traffic signs through a camera on the front windscreen and displays them on the instrument panel to assist the driver in driving.

Traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs are recognised by a camera on the front windscreen and displayed on the instrument panel to remind the driver.

Cruise control speed limit

After activating the traffic sign recognition function, you can enable the cruise control speed limit function.

When the vehicle is running in a cruise control mode, if a speed limit sign of ≥ 30 km/h is recognised and the vehicle speed is above the speed limit, the system will prompt the driver whether to adjust the speed. After the driver's confirmation, the speed will be controlled within the speed limit allowed by the speed limit sign.

Overspeed warning

After the speed limit sign is recognised, in case of overspeeding, the system will alarm to remind the driver to reduce the speed to a suitable range as soon as possible.

Overspeed warning sensitivity

You can set the warning timing for overspeed according to your driving habits.

- 0: a warning will be given when the vehicle speed reaches the speed limit.
- > 0: a warning will be given only when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit.
- < 0: a warning will be given in advance when the vehicle speed does not reach the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

The traffic sign information function is designed to alert the driver to note traffic signs and is not intended to be used in all cases. It should not be a substitute for the driver's judgement on road speed limit messages.

In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

⚠ CAUTION

The traffic sign information function can work properly only when the speed sign is clearly visible. In some situations, the system may not function correctly or may be inactive. For example:

- A sign fades.
- A sign is on a curve.
- A sign is not properly positioned.
- A sign is rotating or damaged.
- A sign is fully or partially blocked.
- A sign is fully or partially covered by frost, snow, dust, etc.
- A speed sign may be positioned too far away or too high.
- A speed sign is arranged horizontally.

- A speed limit reminder or sign is attached to the road surface.
- There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- Strong light may shine on the camera, or the intensity of light changes abruptly.
- The front windscreen around the camera is polluted, damaged or covered.
- The vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle, hindering the camera's detection range.
- The vehicle speed is too low.

NOTICE

- The unit for speed limit signs identified by the system will be consistent with the speed unit displayed on the instrument panel.
- For multiple speed limit values on the same speed limit sign, the system will show the maximum value.
- When multiple speed limit signs are arranged in parallel, the system will display the maximum speed limit value. Refer to the actual speed limit value of the current lane.
- The system may not recognise a speed limit sign when the vehicle is turning.

Adaptive cruise control system

While you drive on a straight and clear motorway, the adaptive cruise control system allows you to keep the vehicle at a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. When the system detects that the vehicle ahead is moving at a speed lower than the set cruising speed of your vehicle, your vehicle will follow the preceding vehicle at a set safe distance.

WARNING

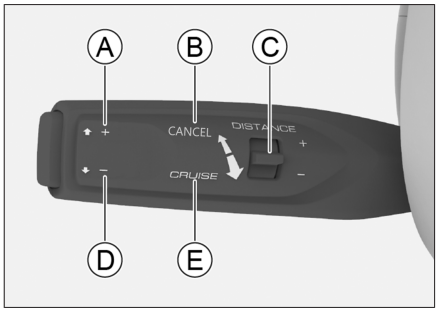
- The adaptive cruise control system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must always concentrate on careful driving.
- Improper use of the adaptive cruise control system may result in a collision.
- Only use the adaptive cruise control system in good weather and when driving on a clear road.
- It is not recommended to use the adaptive cruise control system in conditions such as urban areas, winding roads, narrow roads, slippery surfaces, heavy rain, or other adverse weather conditions.

› When driving on a slope, it is not recommended to use the adaptive cruise control system, mainly for the following reasons:

The system cannot maintain a set speed when the vehicle is going uphill or downhill.

After the vehicle ahead passes the top or bottom of the slope, the system may fail to detect it, resulting in sudden acceleration or late braking.

› When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, the adaptive cruise control system cannot function properly. In this case, do not use the adaptive cruise control system.



653F40BF4B0E

Ⓐ Increasing the speed (+)

Ⓑ Cancelling the cruise control (CANCEL)

Ⓒ Adjusting the distance level (DISTANCE)

Ⓓ Decreasing the speed (−)

Ⓔ Starting the system (CRUISE)

Activating the cruise control

1. While driving, if the adaptive cruise control activation conditions are met, the adaptive cruise control indicator light on the instrument panel turns on in white.

NOTICE

Conditions for activation:

› The driver door is closed.

› The driver wears the seat belt properly.

› Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.

› The electronic stability control system is on.

› The parking brake is not applied.

› The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.

› The vehicle driving mode is in the normal, ECO or sport mode.

2. Move the control lever towards the steering wheel to the 【CRUISE】 position and release it. The adaptive cruise control function is activated, and the adaptive cruise control indicator light on the instrument panel turns on in green.

NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.

⚠ CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the adaptive cruise control system is 30 km/h. When the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h, the system sets the vehicle speed to 30 km/h; when the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruising speed

Move the control lever to the 【+】 or 【-】 position and release it to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Move the control lever to the 【+】 or 【-】 position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

ℹ NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Move the 【DISTANCE】 adjustment knob to adjust the following distance from the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance. At the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the vehicle speed.

ℹ NOTICE

- Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for reasonably adjusting the distance level.
- Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the 【CANCEL】 position and release it.

Resuming the cruising speed

While driving, move the control lever towards the steering wheel to the 【CRUISE】 position for a few seconds and then release it. The system uses the previous cruising speed as the current cruising speed.

ℹ NOTICE

The cruise control function will exit in the following situations:

- Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- The driver seat belt is released.
- The driver door is opened.

- The parking brake is applied.
- The anti-lock braking system is activated.
- The hill descent control system is activated.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) is activated or deactivated.
- The vehicle rolls backwards.
- The brake disc is overheated.
- The vehicle is shut down.
- The vehicle driving mode is not the normal, ECO or sport mode.

Stop & Go function

This function allows your vehicle to follow another vehicle at speeds ranging from 0 to 150 km/h.

In case of traffic congestion, this function can slow down the vehicle to a stop by following the preceding vehicle. In this case:

- If the preceding vehicle leaves within 3 s, this function will assist your vehicle in following the preceding vehicle to start off.
- If the preceding vehicle stops for a long time (3 s to 3 mins), lightly step on the accelerator pedal to restart the system.
- If the preceding vehicle is parked for more than 3 minutes, your vehicle will apply the parking brake.
- If the driver opens the door or releases the seat belt, the vehicle will apply the parking brake.

NOTICE

After the cruise control function is deactivated, the Stop & Go function will be deactivated.

Intelligent turning

For details, please refer to "Forward assist" → "Intelligent turning".(▷ Page 145)

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take braking measures:

- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle.
- There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speeds.
- An oncoming vehicle is approaching in the same lane.
- A vehicle or object is crossing a lane.
- A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, traffic cone, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or motorcycle) appears.
- The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles interferes with the sensor detection.

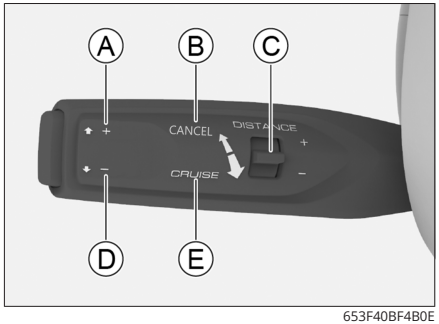
- The front of the vehicle tilts up due to overloading in the luggage area.
- The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- The following vehicle has a relatively small rear dimension or a very high ground clearance.
- The steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.
- Rain, snow, fog, sand, or other bad weather happens.
- A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Intelligent cruise control system

The intelligent cruise control system is based on the adaptive cruise control system. When the sensor detects lane boundaries, it assists the driver in keeping the vehicle in the centre of the lane, facilitating safe and easy vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

This system cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Under poor light conditions (e.g. at night and on cloudy days), rapid changes in light (e.g. in and out of tunnels), large-scale shadows on the ground (objects and landscape features projected on the road surface), and other circumstances, the recognition capability of the sensor will be limited. Therefore, the system cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement of road conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.



653F40BF4B0E

Ⓐ Increasing the speed (+)

Ⓑ Cancelling the cruise control (CANCEL)

Ⓒ Adjusting the distance level (DISTANCE)

Ⓓ Decreasing the speed (−)

Ⓔ Starting the system (CRUISE)

Activating the cruise control

1. During driving, if the intelligent cruise control activation conditions are met, the intelligent cruise control indicator light on the instrument panel will turn on in white.

NOTICE

Conditions for activation:

- The driver door is closed.
- The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.
- The electronic stability control system is on.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
- The system detects the lane boundary, or a moving vehicle ahead when the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- The vehicle driving mode is in the normal, ECO or sport mode.

2. Move the control lever twice consecutively in the direction towards the steering wheel to the 【CRUISE】 position and release it. The intelligent cruise control function is activated, and the intelligent cruise control indicator light on the instrument panel will turn on in green.

CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the intelligent cruise control system is 30 km/h. When the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h, the system sets the vehicle speed to 30 km/h; when the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruising speed

Move the control lever to the 【+】 or 【-】 position and release it to slightly increase or decrease the cruising speed.

Move the control lever to the 【+】 or 【-】 position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruising speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Move the 【DISTANCE】 adjustment knob to adjust the following distance from the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the vehicle speed.

NOTICE

› Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for reasonably adjusting the distance level.

› Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

› Depress the brake pedal.

› Move the control lever away from the steering wheel to the 【CANCEL】 position and release it.

WARNING

The vehicle will not be controlled by the cruise control system after the intelligent cruise control function is cancelled. The driver should immediately take control of the steering wheel, accelerator pedal and brake pedal to avoid danger.

Resuming the cruising speed

While driving, move the control lever in the direction towards the steering wheel to the 【CRUISE】 position, hold for a few seconds, and then release it to resume the cruising speed. At this time, move the control lever twice consecutively in the direction towards the steering wheel to the 【CRUISE】 position and release it to activate the intelligent cruise control system.

NOTICE

The cruise control function will exit in the following situations:

› Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.

› The N, R or P gear position is engaged.

› The driver seat belt is released.

› The driver door is opened.

› The parking brake is applied.

› The anti-lock braking system is activated.

› The hill descent control system is activated.

› The electronic stability control (ESC) is activated or deactivated.

› The vehicle rolls backwards.

› The brake disc is overheated.

› The vehicle is shut down.

› The vehicle driving mode is not the normal, ECO or sport mode.

CAUTION

The intelligent cruise control function may not work properly or even not work in certain situations. For example:

- With the cruising speed above 60 km/h (including 60 km/h), there are no lane boundaries, or the lane boundaries on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- With the cruising speed below 60 km/h, there are no lane boundaries, or the lane boundaries on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured, and there is no driving vehicle directly in front.
- There are objects on the road that affect the identification of the lane boundaries (water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits, etc.).
- There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswinds.
- The lanes merge or separate.
- Strong light may shine on the camera, or the intensity of light changes abruptly.
- The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged, or obscured.
- The vehicle is running on a sharp bend, or a narrow road (such as a motorcycle lane).
- The vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle, hindering the camera's detection range.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take braking measures:

- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle.
- There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speeds.
- An oncoming vehicle is approaching in the same lane.
- A vehicle or object is crossing a lane.
- A pedestrian, animal, roadblock, traffic cone, trailer, special-shaped vehicle or small vehicle (such as a bicycle or motorcycle) appears.
- The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles interferes with the sensor detection.
- The front of the vehicle tilts up due to overloading in the luggage area.
- The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road (such as a motorcycle lane).
- The following vehicle has a relatively small rear dimension or a very high ground clearance.

- The steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.
- When rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, or other adverse weather conditions.
- The vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Off-road cruise control

Function introduction

The off-road cruise control function allows you to keep the vehicle moving at a set speed without having to depress the accelerator or brake pedal. It can be used when the vehicle is in the 4L mode and gear D or gear M is engaged and you drive at low speeds in off-road conditions or on bumpy roads, or when the vehicle is out of trouble.

NOTICE

As the off-road cruise control is designed for off-road driving, the cruise speed is 4 to 12 km/h.

WARNING

- Off-road cruise control is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions or the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver shall be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- Improper use of the off-road cruise control may result in a crash.

  If off-road cruise is used continuously for a long period of time, some systems may overheat. At this point, a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display and the off-road cruise control indicator light will go out. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and shut off the engine to cool some systems.
- When the single-sided wheels slip while the vehicle is in off-road cruise operation, lock the front and rear axle differential locks in time.

WARNING

In some cases, off-road cruise control may not be able to maintain a constant low speed, which may lead to an accident. For example:

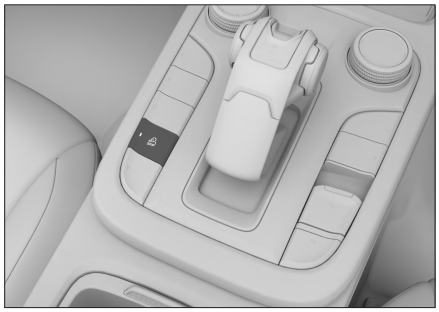
- A steep slope
- Extremely uneven roads

› Snow, icy roads, or other wet and slippery roads

CAUTION

The off-road cruise control function is not available for use when the vehicle is at a high speed.

Turning on and off the system



14AB50426906

Press the button on the auxiliary instrument panel to turn on or off the off-road cruise function.

NOTICE

To turn on the off-road cruise control function, the following conditions must be met:

› The driver door is completely closed.

› The engine is started and the gear N is engaged.

› The vehicle is in the 4L mode.

› The parking brake is released.

After off-road cruise is turned on, the off-road cruise control indicator light on the instrument cluster turns on.

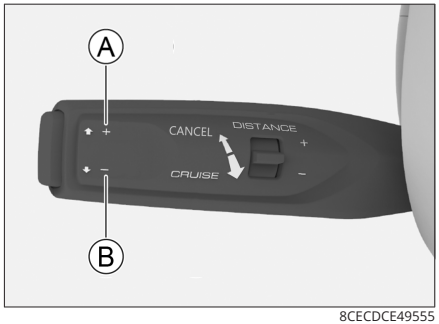
› The indicator light goes on in white to indicate that the function is turned on and that the off-road cruise control system is ready for use.

› The indicator light goes on in green to indicate that the function has been activated. After turning on the function, shift to gear D or M to activate the function, and the off-road cruise function will go into cruising state automatically.

Cruising speed setting

There are 9 cruise speed gears, which can be set and displayed in the multi-information display in the following way.

› Move the control lever directly up or down.



8CECDCE49555

Ⓐ Acceleration

Ⓑ Deceleration

› Depress the accelerator or brake pedal, adjust the vehicle to the desired speed and release the pedal.

NOTICE

When the cruise speed exceeds 20 km/h, the off-road cruise enters stand-by mode; when the cruising speed exceeds 35 km/h, the off-road cruise is automatically switched off.

Refer to some typical road conditions and recommended off-road cruise gear positions listed below:

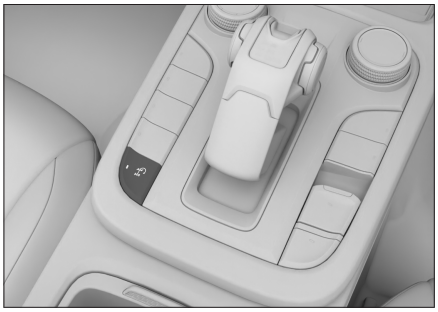
Off-road cruise control gear positions (reference values)	Road conditions
1 gear position to 2 gear position	Rocky road, bumpy road (downward slope), cross-axis road, etc.
3 gear position to 4 gear position	Bumpy road (upward slope), gravel road (downward slope), etc.
5 gear position to 6 gear position	Snow, mud, gravel road (flat road or upward slope), etc.
7 gear position to 9 gear position	Sand, mud, grassland, integrated cross-country road, etc.

Turn assist

Turn assist function can be triggered when the off-road cruise assist system is in use, and it can improve the off-road performance, effectively reduce the turning radius, and thus improve the turn performance while maintaining the set vehicle speed.

Instructions for use

When the off-road cruise is turned on, press the button to turn on or off the turn assist function.



7360355F4C51

When the turn assist is turned on, the turn assist indicator light on the instrument cluster goes on.

- The indicator light goes on in white to indicate that the function is turned on and that the turn assist is in the standby status.
- The indicator light goes on in green to indicate that the function is activated and that the turn assist is in cruise control operation status.

Off-road cruise control assist system

⚠ CAUTION

The following basic conditions must be met in order to activate the turn assist function:

- The vehicle is currently in the off-road cruise activation state.
- The rear axle electric differential lock is not locked.
- The steering wheel is fully turned (turn the steering wheel fully counterclockwise or clockwise to the end).
- The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not pressed deeply.

ℹ NOTICE

The effect of turn assist function is best when the vehicle is cruising under the minimum speed.

The turn assist function goes into standby status when the off-road cruise speed exceeds 10 km/h; when the off-road cruising speed exceeds 30 km/h, the turn assist function is automatically switched off.

⚠ CAUTION

Steering assist function can improve the turn performance when the vehicle is cross-country, but it would damage tyres when driving on paved roads. So please drive with caution.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Hill descent control system introduction

While going downhill, the hill descent control system (HDC) may actively brake to ensure that the driver can maintain a constant speed and drive downhill safely.

WARNING

- HDC is intended only to be an aid. At all times the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and always pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
- In case of a very steep slope, the HDC may not function and thus the vehicle can't be driven down the slope at a constant speed. At this time, you can control the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal.

Instructions for use



EF7C7D6290DA

When the power supply is set to the ON mode or the engine is running, press the button to turn on or off HDC.

- After HDC is turned on, the HDC indicator light on the instrument cluster turns on.
- After HDC is turned off, the HDC indicator light on the instrument cluster goes off.
- When HDC is working, the HDC indicator light on the instrument cluster flashes.

NOTICE

- It is recommended that HDC should be used in lower gear position.
- HDC will be automatically turned off when the vehicle speed is greater than 60 km/h.
- With HDC turned on, the speed can still be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips for auxiliary control systems

About traffic safety

Do not take risks while driving just because the vehicle is equipped with auxiliary control systems. Always ensure that your speed and driving style are appropriate for visibility, weather, road conditions, and traffic.

About modification

Modifications to the suspension or the use of tyres or wheels not specified for the vehicle may affect the auxiliary control systems and could lead to system malfunctions.

About sound and vibration

› Certain auxiliary control systems (such as the anti-lock braking system) may produce vibrations or motor noises during operation, which does not indicate a fault.

› When you jump start the vehicle due to a drained battery, the engine may not run smoothly, and the anti-lock braking system or electronic stability control warning light may turn on. This is caused by low battery voltage and does not indicate a fault in the anti-lock braking system or electronic stability control.

Anti-lock brake system

During emergency braking or when the brakes are applied on wet and slippery roads, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent wheel lock to maintain steering control of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During emergency braking, do not depress the brake pedal several times and gently. Otherwise, the braking distance will increase.

The ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to maintain an adequate safe distance from the vehicle travelling in front, as your vehicle may require a longer braking distance, compared with vehicles not equipped with the ABS in the following cases:

› Drive on muddy, gravel or snowy road.

› Drive with the tyre chains fitted.

› Drive on a bumpy road.

› Drive on potholes or uneven roads.

The ABS may not work effectively in the following conditions:

- The limit of tyre grip performance is exceeded (like using excessive wear tyre on snowy road).
- Drive at a high speed on wet and slippery roads.

Electronic brakeforce distribution system

When braking, the Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) system automatically adjusts the distribution ratio of braking force between the front and rear axles to enhance braking efficiency. It works in conjunction with the ABS to improve braking stability, ensuring a smooth vehicle operation.

Brakeforce assist system

Depress the brake pedal quickly to activate the brakeforce assist system. This system helps enhance braking effectiveness and reduces braking distance during emergency braking.

Traction control system

When you start or accelerate on a wet and slippery road, the traction control system (TCS) helps maintain driving force and prevents the driving wheels from spinning.

Rollover prevention system

When the vehicle turns a corner, the rollover prevention system (RMI) monitors the vehicle's movement to assess the risk of rollover. If there is a risk, RMI will apply brakes to one or more wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling over.

Secondary collision mitigation system

The secondary collision mitigation system (SCM) automatically applies the brakes to the vehicle after the first collision (airbag deployment) to reduce speed or bring the vehicle to a stop, thereby decreasing the likelihood and severity of a second collision.

HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)

When the driver starts on a slope and releases the brake pedal, the hill-start hold control (HHC) can maintain the brakeforce for about 2 seconds to effectively preventing rolling.

⚠ WARNING

When starting on a slope greater than 30%, the vehicle may roll. Therefore, do not rely excessively on this feature. Maintain safe driving practices.

Electric power steering system

The electric power steering system can adjust the power in real time by monitoring the driving speed, so as to ensure the portability of low-speed steering and the stability of high-speed steering and enhance the sense of security.

Electronic stability control system

The electronic stability control (ESC) system can help reduce the risk of side slip, and improve driving stability by braking individual wheel under certain driving situation.

When the ESC works, the ESC indicator light on the instrument panel flashes. Make sure to be more careful at this time.

NOTICE

Generally speaking, the ESC is on throughout the driving process. You can deactivate the system only under following special conditions:

- Drive with tyre chains.
- Drive in deep snow or on soft ground.
- The vehicle is stuck and you need to free it.

Activate the ESC as soon as you exit above conditions.

Turning on or off the system



981C873C8D87

After the vehicle starts, press the ESC OFF button. The ESC OFF indicator light on the instrument panel turns on, indicating that the system is off. Press the button again to restart the ESC system.

NOTICE

The ESC will automatically turn on in the following conditions:

- Every time you start the engine.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 85 km/h.

Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system

Under the condition that the adhesion coefficients of left and right wheels are quite different (for example, some snow and ice covered roads, or wet and slippery roads), when the vehicle is braked or accelerated urgently, the dynamic steering torque control (DST) system will automatically adjust the steering wheel angle based on the rotational speed difference between the two wheels on the same axis and the dynamic variation of the vehicle, to correct the driving direction of the vehicle.

You can activate or deactivate the dynamic steering torque control (DST) system through the【Car】→【Drive】interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

Only when the ESC function is enabled can the DST function be used properly.

WARNING

› The dynamic steering torque control (DST) system is only an auxiliary tool and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement of road and traffic conditions, nor for the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.

› When the dynamic steering torque control (DST) system is working, it will adjust the steering wheel angle automatically only within a limited range. The driver needs to actively adjust the steering wheel angle to ensure the correct direction of driving, depending on actual driving conditions.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Reminder

The emission control system may vary with different engine models. For the particular equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Do not modify any part of the engine or emission control system.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor measures the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust gases and reports that information to the ECU in order to regulate the engine's fuel-air ratio for optimum combustion efficiency and to reduce the amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter is the most important external purifier installed in the vehicle's exhaust system. The catalytic converter contains metallic catalysts that convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides into harmless carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen through oxidation and reduction reactions.

As long as the catalytic converter is used correctly, it generally does not require maintenance. Thus, it should not be disassembled without cause. If replacement is necessary, please contact the service provider.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter, please pay attention to the following items:

- Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with more than the standard amount of manganese or sulphur.
- Do not drive a vehicle with extremely low fuel level. If the fuel is exhausted, it will cause the engine to misfire (this may be confirmed by unstable engine operation or a loss of power), damaging the catalytic converter.
- Do not idle the engine at a high speed for an extended time (5 minutes or longer).

- When a problem with the engine is indicated (such as shutdown or performance degradation), please do not continue driving the vehicle.
- Do not operate the engine with the spark plugs removed.
- Do not start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it.
- Do not add too much engine oil.
- Please avoid striking the catalytic converter.

Turbocharger

The turbocharger can improve fuel efficiency of the engine, improve the vehicle's power and performance, and reduce the displacement of harmful compounds such as particulates and nitrogen oxides in the engine exhaust.

Fuel evaporation control unit

When the vehicle is running normally, the fuel evaporation control unit can make the fuel steam enter the engine to burn, so as to prevent the fuel steam from entering the atmosphere.

Crankcase emission control unit

The crankcase emission control unit guides the mixed gases within the crankcase (such as uncombusted fuel vapours, water vapour, and exhaust) through a connected pipe into an appropriate place in the air-intake pipe to return them to the cylinders and be combusted again. Thus, the exhaust gas can be reduced while the engine fuel economy improved.

On-board diagnostic system

The engine system malfunction warning light is part of the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system.

The engine electronic control unit equipped with the on-board diagnostic system stores various fault information (especially when it comes to exhaust-emissions fault information). The fault information will be cleared if the battery cables are disconnected, making a rapid diagnosis difficult. Therefore, do not disconnect the battery cable when checking the cause of the engine system malfunction warning light illumination.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

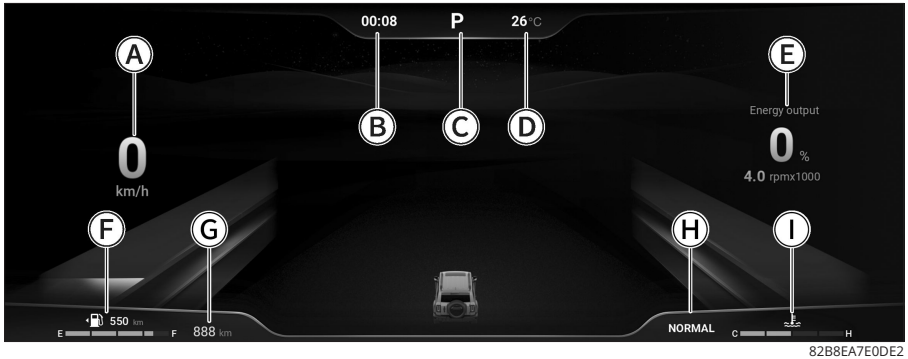
Instrument panel overview

The instrument panel is available in classic, off-road and guide modes. The information displayed varies depending on the modes.

Off-road mode: the instrument panel focuses on displaying off-road related information. For example: vehicle head direction, wheel angle, etc.

Guide mode: the instrument panel focuses on displaying navigation information.

The following is only introduced in classic mode.



82B8EA7E0DE2

Ⓐ Speedometer
Ⓑ Digital clock
Ⓒ Gear position and shift prompts
Ⓓ Exterior temperature
Ⓔ Multi-information display
Ⓕ Fuel gauge and range
Ⓖ Mileage
Ⓗ Driving mode
Ⓘ Coolant temperature gauge

NOTICE

The data in the figure is for illustrative purposes only. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Gear position and shift prompts

It displays the current gear position engaged. When the system recognises the need to upshift or downshift, it will display the upshift symbol ▲ or the downshift symbol ▼ to prompt the driver to upshift or downshift.

Multi-information display

The display content (driving data, multimedia, engine speed, etc.) of the multi-information display can be set as required.

Fuel gauge and range

It displays the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank and the range.

NOTICE

- When driving for an extended period on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may fluctuate due to movement within the tank.
- The range varies according to driving habits and road conditions.
- When the low fuel level warning light on the instrument panel turns on, refuel even if the display shows that the vehicle can travel farther.

Coolant temperature gauge

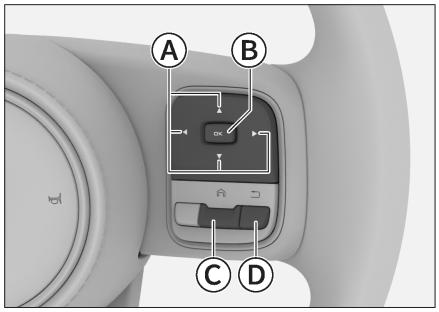
It displays the engine coolant temperature.

CAUTION

When the coolant temperature is close to the red warning zone, immediately slow down and find a safe spot to park your vehicle for inspection, and restart the vehicle after the engine coolant temperature is normal.

Instrument panel control

Control buttons



F4D627FA2165

Ⓐ Select button
Ⓑ OK button
Ⓒ Home button
Ⓓ Back button

Hiding warning messages

Press the back button ⮌ to hide the currently displayed warning messages.

Press and hold the back button ⮌ to hide all the current warning messages.

NOTICE

When there is a warning message on the instrument panel interface, it needs to be hidden first. Otherwise, other control functions of the instrument panel cannot be used.

Viewing audio media information

Press the left button ◀ or the right button ▶ until the multi-information display switches to the audio media interface. At this time, you can view the music or radio station being played.

Viewing Bluetooth phone information

Press the left button ◀ or right button ▶ until the multi-information display switches to the Bluetooth phone interface. After Bluetooth connection and synchronization of call records with the mobile phone, the following operations can be implemented on the Bluetooth phone interface:

› Press the up button ▲ or the down button ▼ to view the call log entries for the Bluetooth phone item by item.

› Press the 【OK】 button to make a call to the selected number.

Mode switching

Press the left button ◀ or the right button ▶ until the multi-information display switches to the mode switching interface.

Press the up button ▲ or the down button ▼to switch between display modes of the instrument. Press the 【OK】 button to make it take effect.

Viewing driving data

Press the left button ◀ or right button ▶ until the multi-information display switches to the driving data interface.

Press the home button ⌂ to return directly to the driving data interface. On the driving data interface, you can:

› Press the up button ▲ or the down button ▼ to view the various driving data page by page.

It contains information after self-starting (mileage, average speed, driving time, average fuel consumption), information after self-reset (mileage, average speed, driving time, average fuel consumption), instantaneous fuel consumption, power indication, tyre pressure monitoring, etc.

› Press and hold the 【OK】 button to view warning history messages and reset travel information.

Press the back button ⮌ to return to the previous interface.

Restarting instrument panel

Press and hold the left play/pause button ⏼ and the right 【OK】 button on the steering wheel simultaneously for about 10 seconds, to restart the audio visual system and the instrument panel system.

⚠ CAUTION

To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment. Shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument indicator lights

NOTICE

- When the power supply mode is switched to ON, some indicator lights or warning lights will turn on for a short time, indicating that the system self-test is in progress, which is normal.
- Depending on the vehicle models, not all indicator or warning lights on the instrument panel will turn on.



Primary warning indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle currently has primary warning messages and that at least one primary warning message is manually hidden.

WARNING

Do not ignore any warning messages. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may occur.

NOTICE

Check all current warning messages of the vehicle in the warning interface of the instrument panel.



Left turn signal indicator light

When the left turn signal light is on, the left turn signal indicator light will flash.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

CAUTION

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually indicates that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Right turn signal indicator light

When the right turn signal light is on, the right turn signal indicator light will flash.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

⚠ CAUTION

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually indicates that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Trailer steering indicator light

After connection with the power outlet of the trailer, this indicator light will work with the turn signal indicator lights by linkage.



Main light switch indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the main light switch is activated.



Position light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the position lights and license plate lights are on.



High beam indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the high beam headlights are on.



Auto high beam indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto high beam function is activated.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto high beam function is malfunctioning. In this case, manually turn on the high beam or low beam headlights as needed and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front fog light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front fog lights are on.



Rear fog light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear fog lights are on.



Unfastened seat belt warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the driver, front passenger, or rear passenger has not fastened the seat belt.

ℹ NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle models, your vehicle may not be equipped with a rear passenger seat belt unfastened warning function.



Door open warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the door is open or not fully closed.



Airbag fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the airbag system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Tyre pressure monitoring system warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, accompanied by a sound prompt. In this case, stop the vehicle for inspection and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light flashes for a period of time and stays on, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning, accompanied by several sound prompts.

⚠ WARNING

If this light turns on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and drive and park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible for inspection.

Driving a vehicle with low tyre pressure or high tyre temperature will increase the risk of tyre failure, and even cause serious damage to the vehicle or an accident.



Parking brake indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the parking brake is applied.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the brake disc temperature is too high or the pavement slope is too steep. In this case, there is a risk of vehicle rolling. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle on a flat road as soon as possible.



Parking brake fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic parking brake is malfunctioning.



Auto vehicle hold indicator light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and working.



Anti-lock braking system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the anti-lock braking system is malfunctioning. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle can still be braked normally, although the anti-lock function is not available.



Brake system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low or that the braking force distribution system is malfunctioning.

In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre. Otherwise, a serious accident may occur.



Electronic stability control system warning light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is working.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.



Electronic stability control off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is deactivated.



Hill descent control indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the hill descent control system is activated and in standby status.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the hill descent control system is working.



Front axle differential lock indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is locked successfully.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is malfunctioning. Go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.



Rear axle differential lock indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is locked successfully.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is malfunctioning. Go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.



Steering assist indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the steering assist function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the steering assist function is working.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the steering assist function does not work.



Electric power steering system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power steering effect is reduced. Use more force on the steering wheel. If this light remains on after the vehicle is restarted or after a short running distance, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system is malfunctioning, and the assisted power no longer exists. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot, turn off the vehicle, and then restart the vehicle several minutes later. If the light remains on, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

⚠ WARNING

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system will stop working. In this case, more force is needed to operate the steering wheel to maintain steering functionality. Visit an authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



High engine coolant temperature warning light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the coolant temperature of the engine cooling system is excessively high. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection and repair. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.



Low fuel level warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the fuel level is low and needs to be refilled soon.

On slopes or when turning, this light may turn on earlier due to the movement of fuel in the fuel tank.

CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle with extremely low fuel. Otherwise, the emission control system and power system may be damaged due to running out of fuel.



Engine system fault warning light

If the light turns on after the engine is started, it indicates that the engine has a fault that affects emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

NOTICE

› Failure of some control systems of the vehicle (such as loss of communication signals in the hybrid system or charging system) may also cause this warning light to illuminate. If the warning light turns on, stop the vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible, switch the power supply mode to OFF, then restart the vehicle and check the warning light. If the warning light remains on, it is recommended to visit the service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Drive carefully and avoid high speeds before identifying the malfunction.

If this indicator light turns on frequently, it is recommended to visit the service provider for inspection even if it turns off after following the preceding steps.

› The fuel tank cap not being properly installed may also cause this light to illuminate.



Engine maintenance warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine has a fault not related to emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Low engine oil pressure warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine oil is low. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and shut down the engine. Otherwise, the engine parts may be seriously damaged. Check the oil level after a few minutes and add engine oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal and the light remains on, contact the authorised service centre.



Battery charging system warning light

If the light turns on after the engine is started, it indicates that the battery charging system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Transmission overheat warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and turn off the engine to allow the transmission to cool down.

If the light remains on after the above steps, contact the authorised service centre.



Driving mode failure warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the driving mode or the all-terrain control system function is invalid, and mode switching cannot be realized at this time. Please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.



Adaptive cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and the cruising speed is successfully set.

NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruising speed.



Intelligent cruise control (ICC) indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is activated and the cruising speed is successfully set.



Off-road cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in white, it indicates that the off-road cruise control function is activated and in standby status.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the off-road cruise control function is activated and working.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the off-road cruise control system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the off-road cruise control function and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Rear side assist system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the sensor of the rear side assist system is blocked. In this case, check for objects covering the inner and outer surfaces of both sides of the rear bumper. If any are found, remove them immediately.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the rear side assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the rear side assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane change assist indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the lane change assist function is activated.



Rear cross traffic alert indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear cross traffic alert function is activated.



Lane departure warning indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is activated.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use this function and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane keep assist indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the lane keep assist function is activated.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane keep assist function is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use this function and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front collision assist system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that there is a malfunction in the auto emergency braking and front collision warning functions. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front collision assist system off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the auto emergency braking and front collision warning functions are deactivated.



READY indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is started and ready for normal driving.



EV indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is in battery electric driving, and the engine is not running at this time.



Traction battery fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that a minor fault occurs in the traction battery.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that a serious fault occurs in the traction battery, and the power system will be powered off urgently.



Power system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle is malfunctioning. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle has a serious fault, and the vehicle cannot continue driving. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Power reduction indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle has a fault affecting the power output of the entire vehicle. In this case, the vehicle power is reduced and the vehicle speed is restricted.



Braking energy recovery fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake energy regeneration function is malfunctioning.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to the power supply management system

The power management system can monitor the power consumption of each electrical equipment in the vehicle and allocate the power reasonably to improve the starting performance of the vehicle and extend the service life of the battery.

The power management system mainly has the following functions:

› **Battery monitoring**

The system will continuously monitor the voltage, current and temperature of the battery through sensors, and calculate the current charge remaining and health status of the battery according to the monitoring results.

› **Sleep power management**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the parking period of the vehicle, and gradually shut down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Smart DC charging**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the long-term parking period of the vehicle. If the system detects a drained battery, it will automatically control the traction battery to charge the battery to ensure starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Static power management**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment when the vehicle is not started, and gradually shuts down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

NOTICE

It is impossible for a power management system to go beyond the boundaries of physical laws. Note that there are limits to the power and service life of the battery.

Information you should know

The power management system will give top priority to ensuring the starting performance of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is not started, the battery power is supplemented by the traction battery. If the traction battery power is insufficient, the battery power will stop replenishing. The use of electrical equipment will directly consume the battery power in this case.

In these situations, the power management system will operate to control the power distribution.

Parking the vehicle for a long time

If the vehicle is not driven for several days or weeks, when the power management system detects that the battery power is too low, it controls the traction battery to charge the battery. If the traction battery power is too low to charge the battery, the power supply management system will gradually turn off the electrical equipment or reduce the electrical energy being used by the electrical equipment, so as to reduce power consumption and maintain the vehicle starting performance for a longer time.

If the vehicle has been parked for a long time, certain convenient functions (such as remote unlocking, mobile APP control function, etc.) may not be available. After starting the vehicle, these functions will be restored.

When the vehicle is not started

If you listen to the radio or use other functions of the audio visual system without starting the vehicle, the power management system coordinates the battery and the traction battery to provide electricity in this case. If the traction battery is too low, the battery power will be gradually consumed.

Power management system

If the battery power consumption affects the starting of the vehicle, a message will be displayed on the multimedia display screen or the instrument panel. At this point, if you want to continue using these functions, you will need to start the vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Towing instructions

Please ensure that you meet the required driving qualifications before towing a trailer.

Before deciding to tow a trailer, first check the relevant automotive regulations in your area, then determine the towing method.

As regulations governing trailer towing and equipment usage vary by location, please consult the relevant local regulations before towing.

CAUTION

- When towing a trailer, please observe all relevant local laws and regulations. Unauthorized modifications to the equipment are strictly prohibited.
- Do not tow a trailer by a new vehicle during the running-in period.
- Please remove the trailer hitch when not towing a trailer.
- The side mirrors of the towing vehicle must comply with the legal requirements. If they do not, please install appropriate trailer rearview mirrors.

Driving instructions

Towing a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling performance, braking performance, and fuel consumption. Please abide by the following driving tips for the safety of you, your passengers, and the towing trailer.

Starting off the vehicle

Before driving, please ensure that the tyre pressure, lights, and connecting equipment for both the towing vehicle and the trailer are in normal condition.

Please securely load all items in the trailer, ensure that all items are safely and securely affixed within the trailer, and ensure that the trailer is kept level. Otherwise, please do not drive the vehicle.

Start off the vehicle gradually, and avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking, especially on wet and slippery roads, to prevent the vehicle from being out of control because of its skidding.

Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to sway, making it extremely hard for you to control the vehicle. If you notice that the vehicle is swaying even slightly, under any circumstances, grip the steering wheel firmly with both hands and immediately start slowly reducing the speed of the vehicle, without any attempt to stop the swaying of the vehicle by speeding up.

Whenever possible, avoid towing a loaded trailer with an empty vehicle. If it is unavoidable, drive slowly due to the unbalanced load situation in the vehicle and the trailer.

Braking

Towing a trailer will increase the vehicle's braking distance. Thus, leave more space between your vehicle and the one ahead.

⚠ WARNING

- If your trailer is equipped with a brake system, please observe the relevant local regulations, and install and operate the system correctly.
- Do not directly connect the hydraulic braking system of the trailer to the braking system of the towing vehicle.

Overtaking

When towing a trailer, the vehicle's effective length increases. Therefore, during overtaking, you must allow for significantly more space ahead of the vehicle you are passing before merging back into the lane.

Reversing

Reversing while towing a trailer is not the same as normal reversing, and is in fact harder. You should be especially careful and strengthen the practice.

While reversing, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left to make the trailer turn left. Similarly, turning the wheel to the right will make the trailer turn right. Reverse slowly and turn to others for help if possible.

Turning

Turn smoothly while towing a trailer, and avoid bumps and sudden operations as much as possible. Additionally, activate your turn signal light in advance. While turning, the turning radius must be larger than when not towing a trailer. In this way, you can prevent the trailer from bumping into the curb, road signs, trees, or other objects.

Driving on slopes

Downshift ahead of time while towing a trailer on a relatively steep or long slope.

Adjust your speed based on the weight of the trailer and the steepness of the slope to avoid the possibility of overheating the engine and the transmission.

Avoid parking on a slope whenever possible. If it is unavoidable, place blocks under the wheels of the trailer and the towing vehicle in addition to engaging the parking brake.

WARNING

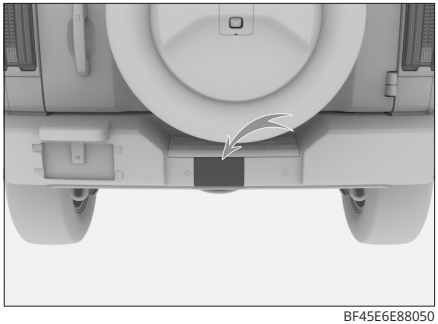
While towing a trailer on a steep slope, pay close attention to the coolant temperature gauge of the engine to ensure that the engine is not overheating.

If the engine's coolant temperature is too high, immediately stop the vehicle for your safety and allow the engine to idle until it cools down.

Carrying passengers

When towing a trailer, do not carry passengers in the trailer.

Trailer hitch connector



BF45E6E88050

The trailer hitch connector is located in the middle of the rear cross member of the frame and can be seen by opening the cover plate in the middle of the rear bumper.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the bumper, it is recommended to use a flathead screwdriver wrapped in cloth to remove the cover plate from the bumper.

It is recommended to use a trailer hitch that is less than 25 cm in length to avoid interfering with the normal operation of the reversing sensor.

NOTICE

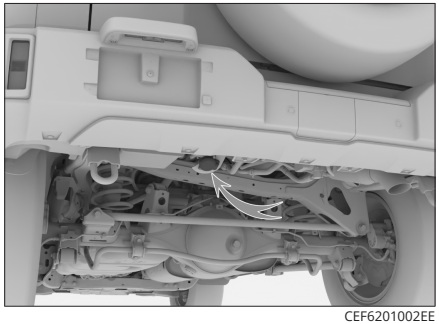
- Owners should buy the trailer hitches by themselves. When installing the trailer hitch, follow the instructions provided by its manufacturer. It is recommended to have it installed by the authorised service centre.
- When a trailer hitch is fitted, the reversing sensor system automatically triggers a self-learning process that lasts approximately 8 seconds after the current speed reaches 15 km/h to prevent false alarms from the reversing sensor.

As there are many different types of trailer hitches available on the market, it is not possible to guarantee that all types of trailer hitches can complete the above self-learning process after installation. If there are still false alarms from the reversing sensor after several self-learning sessions, replace or remove this trailer hitch as it may not be learned effectively.

› After installing the trailer hitch, turn off the low-speed emergency braking function of the parking system to avoid accidental braking when reversing.

Trailer power socket

Power socket location



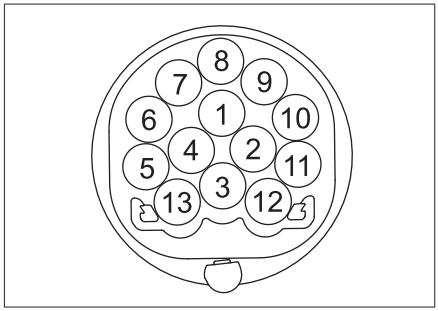
CEF6201002EE

The trailer power socket (connector) is located near the rear trailer hitch on the left side of the vehicle and can be used after opening its cover.

The power socket of this vehicle is equipped with 13 pins. If the connector of the trailer is equipped with 7 pins, you should buy the adapter by yourself.

Standard of the power socket: GB/T 20718-2006 or ISO 11446:2004

Power socket pins



1F487C7B483C

Pin (connection point)	Function
1	Left turn signal light
2	Rear fog light
3	Common loop of 1 to 2 and 4 to 8 connection points
4	Right turn signal light
5	Rear right position light, rear right outline marker light, right marker light, illumination device of rear license plate
6	Brake light

Pin (connection point)	Function
7	Rear left position light, rear left outline marker light, left marker light, illumination device of the rear license plate
8	Reverse light
9	Standing power supply
10	Power supply controlled by the power supply switch
11	Loop of 10 connection point
12	Reserve
13	Loop of 9 connection point

CAUTION

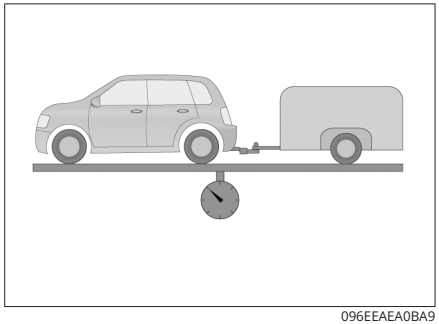
- Do not connect electronic devices on the connection points of the three loops (connection points 3, 11, 13).
- Do not connect the illumination device of rear license plate with connection points 5 and 7 at the same time.

Technical parameters

The towing capacity of the vehicle will depend on factors such as the specifications of the vehicle, its load, road conditions, and the specifications of the trailer. To ensure the driving safety, do not overspeed or drive while the vehicle is overloaded. For specific parameters, refer to the table below.

Item	Data
Engine model	E20NA
Transmission type	9HAT
Drive mode	4WD
Maximum total mass (kg)	3475/3505 (trailer without brakes) 5225/5255 (trailer with brakes)
Maximum permissible front / rear axle load [kg]	1330/1395 1295/1460
Trailer mass (without brakes) (kg)	750
Trailer mass (with brakes) (kg)	2500
Rear overhang of the trailer hitch (recommended) [mm]	1195
Static vertical load on the connecting points [kg]	100
Rear tyre pressure for the towing vehicle (kPa)	Standard tyre pressure + 20
Maximum speed for towing [km/h]	100

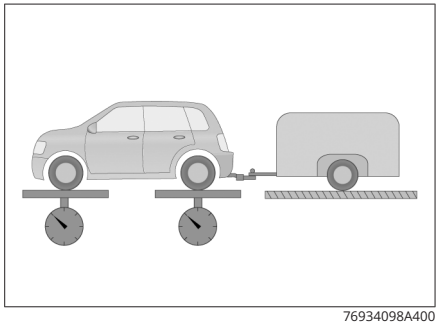
Maximum total mass



096EEAEA0BA9

The maximum total mass is the maximum permissible mass for the combination of the towing vehicle (including passengers and goods), the trailer hitch, and the trailer (including its goods).

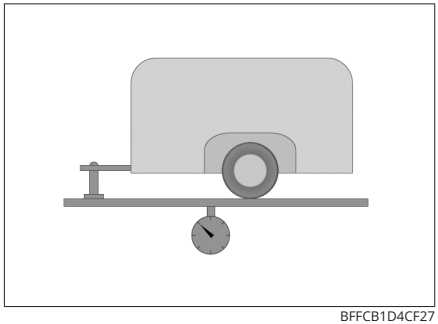
Maximum permissible front and rear axle load



76934098A400

The maximum permissible front and rear axle load is the maximum load capacity permitted for the front and rear axles of the towing vehicle.

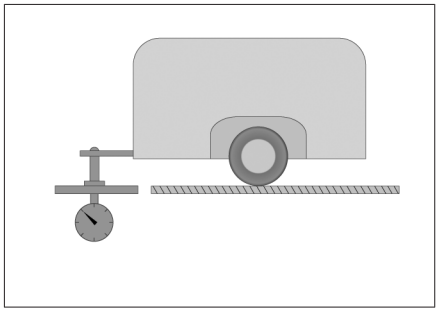
Trailer mass



BFFCB1D4CF27

The trailer mass is the permissible total mass of the trailer, including the mass of both trailer and its goods.

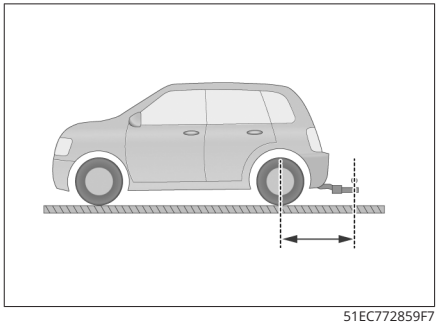
Static vertical load on the connecting points



8592AA18FB55

The static vertical load on the connecting points is the maximum vertical load that the connection between the trailer and trailer hitch can bear under static conditions.

Rear overhang of the trailer hitch



51EC772859F7

The rear overhang of the trailer hitch is the permissible horizontal distance between the centre of the trailer hitch connection point and the centreline of the rear axle of the towing vehicle.

3 Audiovisual system

Safety tips 204
Panel introduction..... 206
Display screen introduction 209
Function introduction 211

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- Ensure that your use of any of the system's features does not distract you and thereby interfere with safe driving. Your most important responsibility while driving is for the safety of the drive. You must obey all traffic regulations.
- During driving, the driver is not allowed to operate the system and must keep the volume of the system at an appropriate level, so as not to affect driving safety due to lack of concentration.
- This system may only be used in areas permitted by law. Some national or local regulations may prohibit use of the display screen within the driver's field of view.
- Do not disassemble or modify the system.
- When a failure occurs, stop using the system and contact authorised service centre. Do not try to repair the system by yourself.

About the use

- For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- Do not press the display screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- Do not strike the display screen when image jitter occurs in process of operation.
- The screen protective film may affect the display effect and touch sensitivity. Please remove the protective film when using.
- Please do not apply the film by yourself. If the product is damaged due to the film, the warranty will be void.
- When using the standby power supply, please use a vehicle charger with a filter circuit to charge external devices to avoid interference with radio and other functions.
- Prolonged screen viewing can cause visual fatigue. Take regular breaks and look into the distance to rest your eyes.

› When the vehicle is bumpy or shaking, it is advised not to watch the screen to avoid motion sickness.

About the radio

When driving the car, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

About USB storage devices

Since there are various types of USB storage devices, this system may not be compatible with all USB storage devices.

About Bluetooth

› Since there are a great number of smartphone brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all the smartphones.

› If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on the smartphone and search it again.

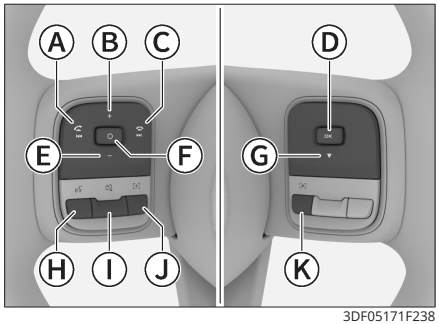
› If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the smartphone, and pair it again.

› If Bluetooth does not function properly when in use, disconnect the Bluetooth and reconnect it.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel buttons



3DF05171F238

Ⓐ Left/answer button

Ⓑ Volume 【+】 button

Ⓒ Right/hang up button

Ⓓ OK button for instrument panel

Ⓔ Volume 【-】 button

Ⓕ Play/pause button

Ⓖ Down button for instrument panel

Ⓗ Voice button

Ⓘ Mute button

Ⓙ Custom button

Ⓚ Custom button

› When there is an incoming call, press the answer button to answer the phone. Press the hang up button to hang up the phone.

› For playing multimedia: press the left or right button to switch between tracks. Press and hold the button for fast rewinding/fast forwarding.

For listening to a local radio: press the left or right button to search for the valid radio, and press and hold the button to access the favourite radio.

› Press the button 【+】 to increase the volume. Press the button 【-】 to decrease the volume.

› Press the play/pause button to play/pause the multimedia.

› Press the voice button to enable or disable the local voice control.

If the local voice control has been enabled, press and hold the voice button to exit the local voice control.

If the mobile phone is not connected, press and hold the voice button to enter the connection setting interface.

If the mobile phone is connected, press and hold the voice button to start Apple CarPlay or Android Auto's voice control.

› Press the mute button to enable or disable the multimedia mute.

› Press the custom button / to execute the set function. Press and hold the button to enter the button function setting interface, and you can set the custom function of the button.

Restarting the system

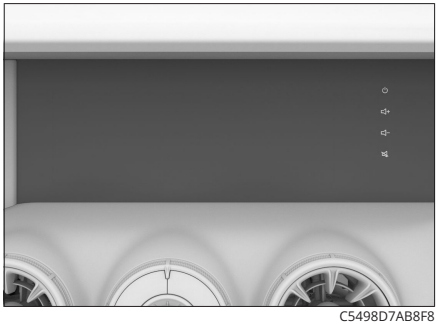
Press and hold the left volume 【-】 button and the right down button ▼ simultaneously for about 10 seconds to restart the audio visual system.

Press and hold the left play/pause button ○ and the right 【OK】 button simultaneously for about 10 seconds, to restart the audio visual system and the instrument panel system.

NOTICE

To ensure safety during restarting, be sure to place the vehicle in a safe environment. Shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake to restart the system while the vehicle is stationary.

Control panel



C5498D7AB8F8

› Touch the power supply button to enter the standby mode. Touch the button again to exit the standby mode.

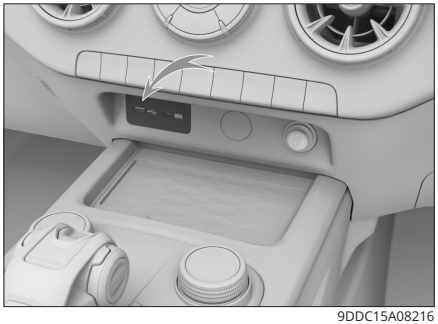
› Touch the volume increase button or volume decrease button to adjust the volume.

› Touch the mute button to turn on the mute mode. Touch the button again to turn off the mute mode.

External devices

USB port

The USB port is located in the middle of the instrument panel, as shown in the figure. Audio files, video files and pictures can be played when connecting a USB flash drive that stores files supported by this system.



9DDC15A08216

NOTICE

› Ensure a stable connection between the external device and the input port.

› Do not insert or remove the device during playback to avoid issues such as the system failing to recognize the device.

Media specifications

This system supports the following media specifications:

Media	Specifications
USB device	USB flash drive with partition formats of FAT16, FAT32 and ExFAT
Bluetooth audio	Bluetooth core protocol version 5.0 (supporting backwards compatibility with version 4.2 and below, supporting BLE), AVRCP version 1.6, A2DP version 1.3 Bluetooth audio devices

File format

This system supports the following file formats:

File	Format
Audio	MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV, FLAC, APE, OGG, and AMR
Video	MP4, M4V, MOV, 3GP, WMV, AVI, MPEG, MPG, MKV, WEBM, and XVID

NOTICE

Even files in formats supported by this system may not be normally played due to file characteristics (such as file quality, bit rate, frame rate, resolution, compression quality, or damage), playback environment, and storage devices.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About multimedia display screen

CAUTION

- Some national or local regulations may prohibit operating the display screen while driving. Please comply with local regulations.
- For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- Do not press the display screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs during operation.

Central display screen status bar

The status bar icons are displayed at the top of the central display screen to show each function status. The status bar icons will change in real time according to functional characteristics, signal intensity, connection status, switch status, etc.

Icon	Function status
	Time display
	Temperature display
	The IOV network signal may vary with the network status. WLAN not connected, showing the 3G and 4G network status
	WLAN connected, showing signal strength
	Hotspot not connected
	Hotspot connected
	Unread messages

Display screen introduction

Icon	Function status
	Bluetooth not connected
	Bluetooth connected
	USB connected
	USB abnormal
	Wireless charging standby
	Wireless charging in progress
	Wireless charging completed
	Applying location permissions
	Applying microphone permissions

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Home

Touch the home button in the sidebar to enter the home interface. It includes application cards, sidebar, etc.

Application cards

Press and hold some cards and drag them to adjust the card order.

Some cards display shortcut function buttons or statuses. Touch the shortcut function button to perform the corresponding function.

Touch the non-shortcut button position of the application card to access the corresponding application interface.

Sidebar

- Touch the application button to enter the full application interface. The application icon is displayed. Touch the application icon to access the corresponding application interface.
- Touch the car button to enter the car interface.
- If the mobile phone is not connected, touch the connection button to enter the connection setting interface. If the mobile phone is connected, the corresponding connection icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding connection interface.
- Touch the 360 button to enter the AVM interface.
- Touch the navigation button to enter the navigation interface.
- Touch the music button to enter the music interface.
- Touch the home button to enter the home interface.

NOTICE

The icons in the sidebar and functions may vary with the model configurations or system versions. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Shortcut panel

On the most interfaces, sliding down from the top of the screen will show the shortcut panel.

Shortcut switch

Touch the switch to access, or activate or deactivate the corresponding function. For some switches, touch the switch for a long time to access the corresponding setting interface.

Touch the 【Customize】 button to access the editing interface and you can change the shortcut switch icon.

Brightness and volume adjustment

Volume: touch and drag the sliding block to adjust the volume.

Vehicle backlight: touch the slider and drag it to adjust the backlight brightness of the instrument panel display, the multimedia display screen, and in-vehicle buttons.

System settings

Touch the Apply → 【Settings】 button in turn to access the settings interface.

NOTICE

The items and functions of the system settings may vary depending on the vehicle models or system versions. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Mobile phone connectivity settings

- 【Bluetooth】: touch the switch to enable or disable the Bluetooth of the system.
- 【Bluetooth visible】: after the function is activated, other devices can detect the Bluetooth of the system and perform pairing connection.
- 【Device name】: it displays the device name of the system, and you can change it to a custom name.
- 【Current connection】: it displays the information of the currently connected device.

  Connection methods include Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto.

  Icon status includes ON (Connected) and OFF (Not connected).

  Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon (ON) to disconnect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon (OFF) to make an Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection with the corresponding device.

Touch the Bluetooth icon to disconnect the Bluetooth.

› 【Connection history】: it displays the information about the paired devices, including the device names and connection mode icons.

Touch the Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon to connect with the corresponding device via Bluetooth, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

› 【Available devices】: it displays a list of nearby devices that can be paired with Bluetooth. Touch the device name in the list to initiate a pairing request. Touch the 【Search】 button to search for Bluetooth devices again.

With the first Bluetooth pairing connection with other devices, if the device supports Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the system will prompt whether to enable Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection, and you can choose according to your needs.

NOTICE

If you choose to cancel the connection and want to connect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto of the device again, delete this device from the current connection or pairing history, then reconnect to Bluetooth and select the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection according to the prompts.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Hotspot settings

› 【Access point】: touch the switch to enable or disable the hotspot. After the function is activated, other devices can connect to this hotspot.

NOTICE

The hotspot of some models only supports mobile phone connection function and cannot provide mobile Internet services. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

› 【Device name】: it displays the name of the hotspot device, and you can change it to a custom name.

› 【Password】: it displays the hotspot password, and you can change it to a custom password.

› 【Connected devices】: it displays a list of devices connected to the vehicle's hotspot.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Wi-Fi settings

› 【Wi-Fi】: touch the switch to enable or disable Wi-Fi.

› 【Current connection】: it displays the connected network. Touch the 【Disconnect】 button to disconnect the network.

› 【Available connections】: it displays detected available networks. Touch the network name for connection.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Sound settings

› 【System sounds】: you can adjust the volume of the multimedia, voice, calls, ring tones, etc., set the switches such as the adaptive starting volume and the system audio reminder, and select the audible car warnings and the speed-sensitive volume control.

› 【Sound-effect settings】: you can set the sound effect, equalizer, sound field, surround sound or stereo, etc.

Display settings

› 【Automatic brightness mode】: touch the switch to activate or deactivate this function. After the function is activated, the screen brightness mode switches intelligently according to the light intensity and position light changes.

› 【Instrument screen brightness adjustment】: you can set the brightness adjustment for the instrument panel display screen.

› 【Central control screen brightness adjustment】: you can set the brightness adjustment for the multimedia display screen.

› 【Vehicle backlight brightness adjustment】: you can adjust the backlight brightness of the instrument panel display screen, multimedia display screen, and interior buttons.

› 【Time display format】: you can select the system time display format as 12-hour or 24-hour clock.

› 【Auto time synchronisation】: touch the switch to activate or deactivate this function. After the function is activated, the time automatically synchronises.

› 【Auto time zone synchronisation】: touch the switch to activate or deactivate this function. After the function is activated, the time zone automatically synchronises.

› Other settings also include 【Time settings】, 【Date settings】, 【Area settings】, 【Time zone settings】, 【Language】, 【Tyre pressure unit】, 【Temperature unit】, and 【Metric/Imperial switching】.

Personalization settings

› 【Voice】: you can activate or deactivate the voice function service, view the default voice wake-up words, set the custom wake-up words, the voice wake-up switch and the shortcut instructions switch, and view the voice-activated assistant functions.

› 【Driver's screen display】: you can select the instrument panel display mode.

› 【Steering wheel 「+」 custom setting】: you can select the custom function of the button ⊕ on the steering wheel.

› 【Steering wheel 「*」 custom setting】: you can select the custom function of the button ✲ on the steering wheel.

Privacy settings

› 【Privacy Policy】: touch this button to view the privacy policy of the infotainment system.

› 【User Agreement】: touch this button to view the user agreement of the infotainment system.

› 【Withdrawal of consent to privacy policy】: touch this button to withdraw the authorization of the privacy agreement.

› Touch any application button to set the privacy permissions for the corresponding application, including location services, vehicle microphone, etc.

System

› 【Version information】: you can view and modify the system device name, view the vehicle system software version, and upgrade the system.

› 【Reset and restore】: you can reset and restore settings which include the following.

【Restart network】: when the vehicle network is abnormal, you can restart the network.

【Reset system settings】: reset all system settings to default values.

【Restore to factory settings】: you can restore all settings (settings and car) to default values. All local files, application data, personal files, etc. will be deleted.

【Authorise remote log collection】: you can activate or deactivate it. After it is activated, the log data can be uploaded.

NOTICE

About resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings:

› During the process of resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings, the interface cannot be operated.

› Resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings cannot be cancelled.

› Conditions for restoring to factory settings: the power supply is in ON mode, the P gear position is engaged, and the vehicle is stationary.

Local media

USB video

Touch the Apply → 【USB video】 button in turn to access the USB video interface, and you can play the video in the USB flash drive inserted into the on-board USB port (located in the middle of the instrument panel with an icon).

Music

Touch the Apply → 【Music】 button in turn to access the music interface. It includes Bluetooth music, USB music, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto audio.

To play Bluetooth music, Apple CarPlay and Android Auto, go to the 【Settings】 → 【Connection】 interface to pair and connect other audio playback devices.

To play USB music, insert the USB flash drive that stores the audio files into the on-board USB port (located in the middle of the instrument panel with an icon).

Radio

Touch the Apply → 【Radio】 button in turn to access the radio interface, and you can listen to the radio.

Online media

Online music

Touch the Application → 【Online Music】 button in turn to switch to the online music interface, where you can listen to online music.

Online radio

Touch the Application → 【Online Radio】 button in turn to switch to the online radio interface, where you can listen to online radio.

TuneIn Radio

Touch the Apply → 【TuneIn Radio】 button in turn to access the TuneIn Radio interface and use the TuneIn Radio function.

NOTICE

- To use the online media services, log in and link the relevant account. Follow the interface prompts for logging in and linking.
- Playing charged content or purchasing a membership will incur relevant fees. The products and services are provided and managed by third parties. Please make purchases voluntarily based on your needs.

  Due to network signal issues, there may be a delay in accessing benefits after purchasing a membership. If you have not received your benefits after a few minutes, please restart your system.
- Using online media services that require Internet access will consume network data.

Communication

Touch the Application → 【Phone】 button in turn to switch to the communication interface. If the Bluetooth devices are not connected, go to the Application → 【Settings】 → 【Connection】 to turn on Bluetooth for pairing.

- After inputting the telephone number, touch the dial button to make a call.

› Touch the 【Contacts】 button to display the contacts list after synchronizing. Touch a contact or phone number in the list to make the call.

› Touch the 【Call records】 button to display the call records after synchronizing. Touch any contact record in the list to make a call.

NOTICE

To use the functions of contacts and call records, authorization is required on the paired mobile phone. Generally, in the process of pairing, a prompt asking for permission will be displayed on the phone.

Calling

After the call is established, switch to the call interface.

› Touch the hang up button to end the call.

› Touch the microphone button to turn the on-board microphone off or on.

› Touch the private/hands-free button to switch to the private mode or the hands-free mode.

Private mode: calling through the phone connected to the Bluetooth of the system

Hands-free mode: calling through the on-board speaker or microphone

› Touching the pad button can enable or disable the dial pad.

Incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the incoming call window will pop up and you can touch the answer button to answer the call. Touch the hang up button to end the call.

WARNING

The driver must always concentrate on driving the vehicle and must not be distracted by calls to avoid accidents.

› Use a Bluetooth phone only when road, traffic and weather conditions permit.

› The volume should be adjusted so that signals from outside like those coming from police cars or fire trucks can be heard at all times.

› Calls may not be made in areas with no or weak network signal, and in tunnels or garages.

› When the driver needs to operate the mobile phone, he/she shall first park the vehicle temporarily in a safe place.

NOTICE

This communication device conforms to standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Power

Touch the ⊞ Application→【Power】 button in turn to switch to the power interface. You can view recent average fuel consumption and energy recovery trends by mileage and date.

Voice control

Voice settings

You can set voice settings through the Application ⊞ → 【Settings】 → 【Personalization】 → 【Voice】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

You can activate or deactivate the voice function service, view the voice default wake-up words, set the custom wake-up words, the voice wake-up switch and the shortcut instructions switch, and view the voice-activated assistant functions.

Instructions

There are several ways to activate the voice control:

› Press the voice button on the steering wheel.

› Voice wake-up: you can activate this function by default wake-up words or custom wake-up words.

WARNING

When you control the vehicle using the voice control, please pay attention to the surroundings and personal safety to avoid pinch, collisions and other severe accidents.

NOTICE

› The success rate of voice recognition will be affected by environmental noise, network, usage habits, pronunciation and other factors. The specific use effect is subject to the actual vehicle environment.

› Some functions of voice control require Internet access.

I Space

Touch the Application ■→【I Space】 button in turn to access the I Space interface.

NOTICE

Some models are not equipped with the I Space feature, depending on the country or the region. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Cave time

On the I Space interface, touch the 【Cave time】 button to enter the cave time mode.

Touch the settings button ••• to make the rest setting. You can activate and set the regular break reminder, the seat resting position memory, etc. Touch the 【OK】 button to save the settings.

› The system will play white noise and you can switch between the sounds by sliding left and right on the screen.

  White noise, such as the sounds of a campfire or falling rain in the nature, is a soft noise that can help calm your mood, improve focus, and promote relaxation.

› The sunroof will automatically tilt up by a gap and the windows will be raised.

› If the A/C is off, it will automatically turn on.

An alarm will sound when the scheduled rest time ends.

Sweet home

On the I Space interface, touch the 【Sweet home】 button to enter the sweet home mode.

› The system will play background music. You can switch between tracks by sliding left and right on the screen or by touching the left and right arrows.

› The sunroof will automatically tilt up by a gap and the windows will be raised.

› The ambient lights turn on automatically.

› If the A/C is off, it will automatically turn on.

Connection

Function introduction

The connection function can project some mobile phone applications to the on-board multimedia display screen for display and control, mainly including navigation, music, telephone, etc. This can ensure you have a safer and more convenient driving experience.

NOTICE

- Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some iPhones may not support the Apple CarPlay function.
- If the Android Auto app is not installed on your Android phone, download the latest app from the Google Play App Store and install it. Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some Android phones may not support the Android Auto function.
- When the mobile phone is connected, the Bluetooth phone function is not available, and the mobile phone function of the connection can be used at this time.

Connection portal

The connection icon is displayed in the sidebar:

- If the mobile phone is not connected, touch the connection button in the sidebar to enter the connection interface.
- If an Apple CarPlay is connected, the Apple CarPlay icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to access the corresponding Apple CarPlay interface.
- If Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to access the corresponding Android Auto interface.

Touch the application button to enter the application interface to display Apple CarPlay and Android Auto icons:

- If the Apple CarPlay is not connected, the Apple CarPlay application icon is greyed. Touch this icon to enter the connection settings interface. If Apple CarPlay is connected, Apple CarPlay application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter Apple CarPlay interface.

› If the Android Auto is not connected, the Android the Auto application icon is greyed. Touching this icon will pop up the connection method prompt interface. If the Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter the Android Auto interface.

Wireless connection

You can activate the on-board Bluetooth, pair and connect iPhone or Android phone with the on-board Bluetooth on the Application ⊞→【Settings】→【Connection】 interface. Then follow the prompts to complete the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto connection.

On the 【Settings】→【Connection】→【Current connection】 interface, touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto icon to disconnect the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Wired connection

Use the mobile phone USB cable to connect the iPhone or Android phone with the on-board USB port (located in the hollow place of the auxiliary console), and then follow the prompts to use the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Disconnect the USB cable directly to exit the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

NOTICE

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile phone to ensure successful connection.

Users

Touch the Apply ⊞→【Users】 button to access the users interface.

Account login

In the users interface, touch the 【Login】 button to access the login interface. You can login to your account through various methods.

After logging in

After logging in to your account, you will be redirected to the users interface.

NOTICE

Some functions of the users can only be set up and used by the owner account (the account with the avatar wearing a crown).

› Touch the 【Switch account】 button to enter the switch account interface. You can switch between accounts or log in to another account. If the currently logged-in account is the owner account, you can delete other accounts.

› Touch the 【Log out】 button to log out of the current login account. If you check "Clear the relevant information of this account", the relevant information of the account in this vehicle will be cleared.

› Touch the 【Privacy Policy】 button to view the privacy policy of the vehicle.

› Touch the 【User Agreement】 button to view the user agreement of the vehicle.

› Touch the 【Withdrawal of consent to privacy policy】 button to show the withdrawal of consent to privacy policy dialogue box and confirm it to withdraw the authorization of the privacy policy.

Messages centre

Tap the ⠿ Application→【Messages】 button to switch to the message centre.

After logging into your personal centre account, you can use the message centre function. Messages received by the system are displayed and can also be viewed and managed.

App store

Touch the Apply ⠿ → 【App store】 button in turn to access the app store interface. In this interface, you can download, update, and manage media applications from the app store.

NOTICE

› Downloading and updating applications will consume network traffic.

› Downloaded applications are third-party applications; the products and services are provided by, and remain the responsibility of, third parties.

System manager

Touch the Apply ⠿ → 【System Manager】 button in sequence to access the system manager interface.

In this interface, you can optimize the system performance, free up system storage space, manage the whitelist of applications, manage APPs data and cache, etc.

Weather

Touch the ⊞Application → 【Weather】 button in turn to switch to the weather interface. You can check the weather information for the current day and the next few days.

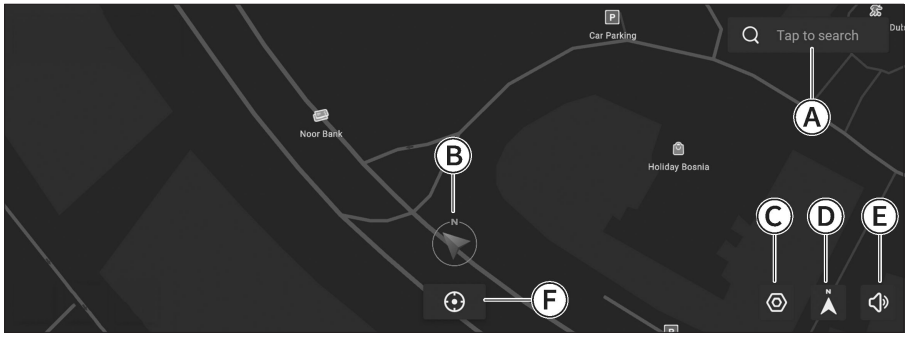
NOTICE

Weather information is for reference only. The weather function can only be used normally when the network signal and location service are normal.

Navigation

Map interface

Touch the navigation button on the sidebar to enter the main navigation interface.



EB4ABA038EA1

Ⓐ Destination search
Ⓑ Vehicle location
Ⓒ Guidance options
Ⓓ Map view
Ⓔ Navigation mute
Ⓕ Back to vehicle location

Some function buttons will automatically hide if they are not operated for a period of time. Touch the non-button position on the map to call up the hidden function buttons.

Destination search

Touch this button to access the destination search interface, which contains the following functions:

› You can search for a destination by entering the destination name or keywords.

› You can view the search history and destinations, and edit or set one of them as a destination.

› You can set your home or work address and set it as a destination quickly once you have set it.

› You can access your favourites and view the favourite locations. And you can also view, delete favourite locations and set one of them as a destination.

› It also allows you to search by category, including Restaurant, Parking, Dealer, etc.

Navigation mute

Touch the mute button to activate or deactivate the navigation mute function.

Map view

Touch this button to switch the map view to head-up (2D), due north-up (2D) or 3D mode.

Guidance options

In the map interface, touch the guidance options button to access the guidance options interface.

You can set up Traffic, Auto zoom, Voice guidance, Vehicle icon, Route options, Clear personal data, Map management, Version information, etc.

Vehicle location

It shows the location of your vehicle on the map.

Back to vehicle location

Touch this button to get back to the position of your vehicle.

About navigation system

The navigation system uses satellite signals, vehicle signals, map data, etc. to calculate the current vehicle location. In general, the navigation system can accurately calculate the current vehicle location through 4 or more satellites.

Please use this system under the premise of complying with traffic laws.

It is advised not to operate this navigation while driving the vehicle. Please ensure safety after parking before operating to prevent traffic incidents or other dangerous situations.

Timeliness of the navigation system

This navigation system either contains no pre-installed map data or only a basic national map data package. To use the navigation function, an internet connection is required for online navigation, or you can pre-connect to the internet to download offline map data. When the vehicle is not connected to the internet and only offline navigation is used, some online functions and services (real-time traffic, traffic restriction prompts, etc.) will be unavailable.

Using services that require Internet access, such as online navigation, traffic conditions and data downloads, will consume network traffic.

Due to changes in facilities, roads and areas, there may be cases where you cannot be correctly guided to your destination.

About error

The functions and services provided by the navigation, including location search, route planning, travel navigation, traffic restriction alerts and traffic conditions, are for reference only. Please do not take them as the only reference for driving or travelling. Please refer to the actual traffic and road conditions and strictly abide by traffic laws and traffic rules.

In the case of normal satellite signal reception, the navigation system also has certain errors, but in most cases the navigation system can compensate errors by automatic correction.

Weather or physical barriers (mountains, tunnels, tall buildings, big trees, etc.) will affect the reception of navigation signals. At this time, the navigation system may not be able to accurately display the current vehicle location.

Even if the navigation system receives a clear satellite signal, it may not be able to accurately display the current vehicle location or may give inappropriate route guidance in some cases.

In the following cases, the current vehicle location may not be displayed accurately:

- Drive on a Y-shaped road with a small turning angle.
- Drive on winding roads.
- Drive on slippery roads (roads with sand, stone, ice and snow, etc.).
- There are parallel roads (e.g., under viaducts, main/auxiliary roads).
- The vehicle has been transported on a ferry or vehicle carrier.
- The turntable has been used in a parking lot.

› The vehicle is parked in a carport or garage.

Inappropriate route guidance may occur in the following situations:

› Drive without following the directions of route guidance.

› If you set multiple destinations, but skip any of them, auto re-search will display the route back to the destination on the previous route.

› Re-search the route when driving on motorway.

› A destination has multiple names, but the system suggests one or several of them.

› The route cannot be searched.

› Drive through gravel roads, unpaved roads or alleys.

› The road is temporarily impassable due to road construction or other reasons.

› The navigation data is not updated in time.

› The searched route is not the best route.

› The destination is across the street.

› Drive on a U-turn road.

About online upgrade

Your vehicle has the "online upgrade" function (OTA for short). You can access the vehicle system update interface through the Apply ■→【Settings】→【System】→【Version information】 interface.

When the vehicle system detects an online upgrade task, it will send a message or pop-up window to prompt you for upgrade. Upgrade to the new version as soon as possible to provide the latest functions for your vehicle.

Precautions

› Before the upgrade, make sure that the vehicle is in the P or N gear position, apply the parking brake, and ensure that the vehicle battery are fully charged.

› Before the upgrade, please ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place that does not affect normal traffic, and allow enough time for upgrade.

› During the upgrade, the vehicle can not be used. Fault prompts and screen restarts are normal phenomena. Do not power it off or change the vehicle status.

Upgrade result

You will be notified of the upgrade result once it is completed. After a successful upgrade, the vehicle can be restored to use.

Function introduction

NOTICE

The system upgrade may cause modifications in some functions and changes in the use habits of related functions. Please read the update details carefully to understand the changed functions before the system upgrade. If you are not familiar with the changes in the functions, please use them with caution to avoid vehicle failure or personal injury caused by misoperation.

If the upgrade fails, the vehicle will remain stationary, and you can take the following actions:

› You can try to check the update again for upgrade. If the upgrade is successful, the vehicle can be restored to use. Please contact the authorised service centre immediately if the upgrade fails many times.

› Check the instrument panel screen. If a fault prompt appears, the vehicle may pose a safety risk and must not be used. Please contact the authorised service centre immediately. If no fault prompt appears, the vehicle may also have inconsistent controller software version information. It is advisable to contact the authorised service centre to confirm the vehicle status before using the vehicle.

4 Safety

Seat belts 230
Airbags 235
Child restraint system..... 242
Vehicle anti-theft system..... 250
Emergency shut-off system 252
Event data recorder 253

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

- The shoulder belt must not hang on the neck area, or pass under the armpit area.
- The lap belt must be secured as firmly as possible around the lower part of the hip bone.
- Each seat belt can only be used by one person. More than one person (including children) must not share the same seat belt.

  If more than two people wear the same seat belt, when the vehicle is involved in a collision, not only the seat belt can not disperse the impact, but there is a danger of two people colliding with each other.
- The seat belt shall not be twisted or slack.
- Do not wrap the seat belt around objects with sharp corners, or it may be damaged during an accident.
- Never use a seat belt that has undergone strong impact from an accident or which is otherwise damaged.
- Do not remove, disassemble or alter seat belts.
- Do not use the seat belt with foreign object in the buckle.
- We suggest that when you use the seat belt, you shall keep your seat belt clean. Oil and water-based materials such as soil, oil stain, water, beverage, food residue, shall not be attached to the seat belt so as to ensure that it can be pulled out and retracted smoothly.
- Do not use organic substances, such as benzene or gasoline, to clean the seat belts, and do not bleach or dye them.
- Children must not play with the seat belt.

  If a child accidentally wraps the seat belt around his or her neck while playing with the seat belt, he/she may not be able to pull the seat belt, resulting in serious injury or even death. In this case, if the locking tab of seat belt cannot be released, use a pair of scissors to cut the seat belt.
- Inside seat belt design is mainly based on adult size, so please install proper child restraint system for children.

When the seat belt is being used correctly, if the belt is in contact with the child's neck or jaw area or slack to the hip, please switch to a child seat instead.

If the child is old enough to use inside seat belt, he (she) shall wear the belt properly.

› Precautions for pregnant women

We strongly suggest that you use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor. The recommended way of wearing the seat belt for pregnant women is fundamentally the same as for other passengers. However, such passengers should take note of the following:

1) The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible in the abdomen area, below the bulge of the belly.

2) The shoulder belt should run over the passenger's shoulder, over the chest area but avoid the passenger's abdomen area.

If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, during emergency braking or collisions, the seat belt may tighten over the abdomen area, causing injury or even death to the pregnant mother and unborn child.

› We strongly recommend that passengers who are ill or disabled use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor.

› When the seat belt is not in use, the it shall be fully retracted. Do not twist or jam the seat belt, and do not allow the seat belt to touch any sharp objects. The seat belt buckle cannot be blocked by foreign objects. Otherwise, correct engagement of the seat belt locking tab and the buckle will be affected.

Wearing the seat belt properly

› Adjust the seat backrest, sit up straight, and keep your upper body pressed against the backrest.

› The seat belt should lie flat.

› The shoulder belt should fit snugly across the middle of your shoulder, not against your neck or off your shoulder.

› The lap belt should be fastened as low as possible across your hip bones.

⚠ WARNING

› During driving, all occupants in the vehicle must wear seat belts correctly. Otherwise, during emergency braking or a collision, serious injury or even death may occur if the body is not properly restrained in the seat.

› At all times, even on short trips, all occupants must wear seat belts properly. Failure to do so increases the risk of injury or death in the event of an accident.

NOTICE

› To fully ensure the safety of drivers and passengers during travel, when the vehicle tilts laterally or longitudinally to a certain angle, or even unfortunately rolls over, the seat belt will quickly and automatically lock, preventing the webbing from being pulled out. This safety design ensures that you are securely restrained in your seat, minimizing the harm caused by accidents to the greatest extent.

› If you park your vehicle on a slope, the vehicle will be in a tilted position. When you get in the vehicle and prepare to wear your seat belt, you may encounter a situation where the seat belt is locked and cannot be pulled out smoothly. To avoid such inconvenience, it is recommended that you first move the vehicle to a flat, level surface before fastening your seat belt.

Pretensioner seat belts

When a collision occurs, the pretensioner can instantly tighten the seat belt, so that the passengers are best restrained and protected.

The force limiter maintains seat belt load at an acceptable level and reduce force exerted on the passenger's chest.

Operating conditions

The pretensioner seat belt works when the vehicle receives a significant impact from the front.

It may not work when the following mild collisions occur:

› Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h .

› Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h .

The pretensioner seat belt may not fully function when the vehicle is subjected to the following severe collision.

› The vehicle flips over by 90° or 180°.

› The collision comes from the side or rear of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Your vehicle may only be equipped with pretensioner seat belts for some seats. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

WARNING

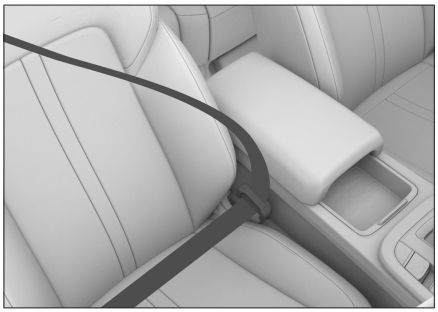
› When using the pretensioner seat belt, wear it correctly and adjust the seat to the optimal seating position. Failure to do so will reduce the seat belt performance, leading to severe injury or even death.

- If you want to install, remove or dismantle the pretensioner seat belt, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. If the pretensioner seat belt is not used correctly, it will not work properly and may cause severe injury or even death in an accident.
- The pretensioner seat belt cannot be used repeatedly.

  After the pretensioner has been deployed during the first collision, you should not extend or retract the seat belt again. At this point, be sure to contact the authorised service centre for replacement.
- When the pretensioner seat belt is working, white smoke will come out with a loud sound, but it will not cause a fire and is harmless to the human body.
- When a pretensioner seat belt is scrapped, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. Accidental movements of the pretensioner seat belt can cause personal injury.

Three-point seat belt instructions

1. Hold the locking tab and pull the seat belt out of the retractor. Do not twist the seat belt in the process. If you are unable to pull the seat belt out of the retractor, you will need to pull hard the seat belt and then release it. Doing so will trigger the retractor and allow you to pull out the seat belt smoothly.
2. Insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.



91A14936D52F

3. Pull up the shoulder belt and adjust the lap belt until the lap belt tightly fits the body. In this way, the pelvis can bear the impact, reducing the risk of injury.
4. Check that the shoulder belt is across the chest and the middle of the shoulder tightly. Thus, any impact will be distributed across the upper skeleton.

5. Press the unlock button on the buckle to retract seat belt. After the buckle has been released, hold on the locking tab until the seat belt has been fully retracted. Take care that the locking tab does not knock into other passengers or any nearby objects.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

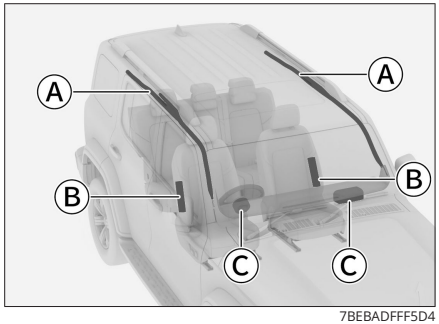
Tips for safety

- Airbags cannot be reused.

  Once an airbag has been used, it will not work anymore in the second or subsequent collisions, so be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.
- The airbags are auxiliary devices to protect the passenger safety and should be used with the seat belts. In order to obtain the effect of airbags, the passengers must wear the seat belts correctly and maintain the correct posture.
- Proper use of airbags can realize their safety effectiveness to the full. If it is used improperly, it may not play a security role, but may bring harm to passengers.
- When the airbags are being deployed you will notice some loud sounds and smoke. This is normal and will not lead to a fire. The smoke released, however, may cause breathing difficulty when inhaled by individuals suffering from asthma or other respiratory disease. At this moment, it is safer to flee out of the vehicle immediately. If you are unable to evacuate from the vehicle, open vehicle doors or windows to let fresh air in.
- When any debris (or gas) released by airbags deployment comes in contact with the eyes or skin, clean such material off using water as soon as possible. Otherwise, individuals with skin hypersensitivity may experience a skin reaction.
- Do not touch airbag components after the airbag has been deployed. Because its component parts will become very hot, it may cause burns and other major injuries.
- Please do not use the airbag for any other purposes.
- Please get in touch with authorised service centre if you need to install radio equipment. Electromagnetic waves emitted by wireless equipment have a significant impact on the airbag control units.
- It is forbidden to strike or squeeze the airbags and the position around it.

Avoid the condition that the airbags cannot work normally during accident or the airbags are accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.

Airbags



7BEBADFFF5D4

Ⓐ Curtain airbags

Ⓑ Side airbags

Ⓒ Front airbags include the following types:

Driver airbag

Front passenger airbag

Front airbags

Overview

The front airbags are located in the steering wheel and the instrument panel in front of the front passenger seat, with the airbag signs on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. When the vehicle encounters a strong front impact, the seat belt will be tightened. At the same time, the airbags at the driver's side and front passenger's side will deploy in order to distribute and cushion any force directed towards the head and chest.

Operating principle

When a head-on collision occurs resulting in moderate or severe impact, the sudden deceleration of the vehicle will be detected by a sensor. At this time, the control device will immediately deploy the airbags.

Precautions

› The airbag may deploy when the bottom of the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:

1) The vehicle hits the kerb.
2) The vehicle falls into, or runs over a deep pit or drain.
3) The vehicle climbs over steps and hits or falls on the road.

› The airbags may deploy when the vehicle rolls over 90° and 180°.

- The airbags may not deploy when the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
  1) Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h mph).
  2) Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h mph).
- If the object suffering impact changes in its shape or moves, the impact force from the collision will be reduced. In this case, the airbags may not deploy.

  When the vehicle collides into a truck from the back, if the vehicle runs under the cargo box, as the impact force recognized by the sensor is weak, the airbags may not deploy.
- The airbags may also not deploy depending on the angle and direction of collision, even when vehicle speed is relatively high.
- Do not allow your body to get too close to the steering wheel or to the lower part of the instrument panel:
  1) When driving a vehicle normally, the driver should stay away from the steering wheel as far as possible while maintaining the correct driving position.
  2) The front seats should be as far from the instrument panel as possible.
  3) All passengers should fasten seat belts for optimal protection.
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean on the instrument panel while the vehicle is running.

  This is because front airbags deploy at a high speed and with great force. If the passenger is too close to the airbags at this point, he or she may suffer severe injury or even death.
- Do not allow children to stand in front of the airbag.

  When front airbags deploy, it may cause severe injury or even death to child passengers. All children should sit on the rear seats and be protected with the correct restraints.
- Adhere to the following rules; otherwise these items may cause severe injury to passengers during airbags deployment:
  1) Do not place objects on the instrument panel or lean umbrellas or other objects against it.
  2) Do not leave objects in the storage box exposed.
  3) Do not hang any objects on windows or on the interior rearview mirror.
  4) Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.
  5) Do not place luggage, pets or other objects between the airbags and the driver or the front passenger.

- Do not clean the inside of the vehicle with water or cleaning solution.

  The inflater in airbag is a deployment device. If it becomes damp, the normal operation of airbag will be affected or even serious injuries or death will be caused.
- Do not apply wax, stickers or similar items to the airbag cover.

  Failure to adhere to the advice can impede the airbags deployment.
- Do not damage the airbag cover.

  Otherwise, it will not work normally. Therefore, be sure not to open or damage the airbag cover.
- Do not dismantle, modify or install devices such as airbags, the instrument panel and the steering wheel.

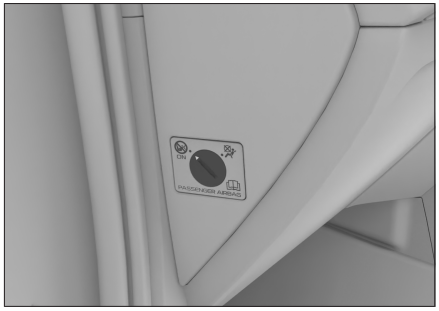
  Improper operations can cause airbags to malfunction or deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.
- Do not modify the suspension.

  If the vehicle height or suspension stiffness is changed, airbags may deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.
- Consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to install a guard plate and air deflector at the front of the vehicle.

  Modifications to the front of the vehicle can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby triggering accidental deployment of airbags, which may cause serious injuries or even death.
- Be sure to consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to repair the front of the vehicle or the cabin.

  Improper repairs can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby leading to airbag malfunctions, which may cause serious injuries or even death.

Front passenger airbag switch



C1BCB64E2A95

The front passenger airbag switch is located on the side of the front passenger instrument panel.

Turn the front passenger airbag switch to the OFF position to turn off the front passenger front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger airbag OFF warning light OFF on the reading light turns on.

Turn the front passenger airbag switch to ON position to turn on the front passenger front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger airbag ON warning light ON on the reading light turns on.

WARNING

- Be sure not to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat while the front passenger airbag is turned on. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.
- If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, be sure to turn off the front passenger airbag. Otherwise, a serious accident or even death may occur.

  In other conditions, do not turn the front passenger airbag switch to the OFF position. Otherwise, the front passenger airbag will not deploy if a serious collision occurs to the vehicle.

Side airbag

Overview

The side airbag is located inside the outer liner of the seat backrest, with the word "AIRBAG" marked on the seat backrest. The side airbag is a supplement in guaranteeing safety in addition to the seat belt. In case of collision from one side, the side airbag will reduce the harm to passengers in the vehicle and prevent further collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters collision from one side, the sensor will detect an acute change in acceleration on this side and then send a signal to the control device. The side airbag will deploy instantaneously if the operating conditions of the airbag are met.

When a side collision occurs, only the side airbag on the collision side will deploy. In case of collision on the front passenger side of the vehicle, the side airbag on the front passenger side will still deploy even though there is no one in that seat.

Precautions

- The side airbag may not deploy sometimes when the vehicle encounters mild collisions described below:
  1) Front collision.
  2) A minor side impact with weak signal received by the electronic control unit.

3) Rear collision.
4) Rollover.

› Never place any object over the side airbag Otherwise, the normal work of the side airbag will be disturbed.
› Never attach any object around the side airbag deployment area. Such objects may be dislodged when the side airbags deploy.
› Never remove, repair or modify the seat with a side airbag and parts around the side airbag deployment area.

Warning label (Schematic diagram)



0C8DAAED6C78

The identification is located on the central pillar. It serves to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with side airbags and to pay attention to the relevant issues.

Curtain airbags

Overview

The curtain airbag is located on the lower edge of the roof with the word "AIRBAG" marked on the pillar. The curtain airbag is a supplement of seat belt. In case of a side collision, the curtain airbag will reduce the damage to passengers' heads and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters collision from the side, the sensor will detect an acute change in vehicle speed and then send a signal to the control device. If the curtain airbag work conditions are met, the curtain airbag on the collision side will deploy instantaneously.

Precautions

› The curtain airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters minor collision such as what is described below:
1) Front collision.
2) A minor side collision with weak signal received by the electronic control unit.
3) Rear collision.

- Never remain close to the vehicle doors, pillars or roof rail, or kneel on the front passenger seat. Failure to adhere to the advice can cause passengers' heads to suffer a severe impact when the curtain airbag deploys, which may cause serious injuries or even death. Be sure to pay attention to it especially when children are in.
- Never attach any object around the curtain airbag deployment area. Failure to adhere to this can cause such objects to be dislodged when the curtain airbag deploys.
- Never hang heavy or sharp objects on the coat hook.

  Never use clothes hangers if you wish to hang your clothing, and opt for the coat hook directly instead. Failure to adhere to this can cause clothes hangers to be dislodged when the curtain airbag deploys.
- Never remove, repair or modify parts around the curtain airbag deployment area.

  Never modify roof, roof handrail, roof handrail bracket and side roof light.

Roll Sensing Curtain Airbags (RSCA)

In the event of a rollover accident, the sensor will detect a sharp change to the angular velocity in the vehicle longitudinal axis direction and send the signal to the control device. If the working conditions of the curtain airbags are met, the curtain airbags on both sides will instantly deploy.

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle configurations, some vehicles may not be equipped with RSCA. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety instructions for child seat

Warning label



90A96F30A2E6

This label, which is located on the front passenger side sun visor, is used to alert you that your vehicle is equipped with front airbag. Note the relevant precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use rear-facing child restraint systems on the seats protected by front airbag (activated), which may cause the child suffering from death or serious injury.

- If the child seat is not installed with child seat fixing device, use the seat belt to install it and then follow the installation instructions provided with the child seat.
- Properly fasten the child seat inside the vehicle.

  If you install the child seat incorrectly, in the event of emergency braking or accident, severe injury or even death may occur.
- Do not place unsecured child seat protection devices in the vehicle.

  If you leave it inside the vehicle, it may come into contact with passengers or other objects in the event of emergency braking or severe impact, causing a severe injury or even death.
- Even when the child has sat in a child seat, take care that his or her head or body is not leaning against the vehicle door pillar or roof rail.

  When the curtain airbag fully deploys, it can be very dangerous in this scenario as the deployment force may cause severe injury or even death to the child.

- Depending on the different types of child seat, when installing or removing a child seat, refer to the install instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.
- It is recommended that children are seated on the rear outboard seating positions, with the appropriate child restraint system. Be sure to leave enough space around the child seat and adjust the seat in front if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

The following instructions must be followed for using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

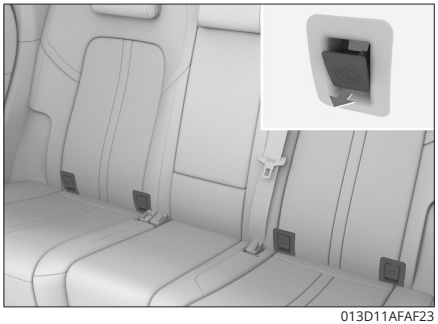
- When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.

  The front passenger airbag must be activated as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is removed.
- If necessary, adjust the seat backrest angle until there is stable contact between the seat backrest and the child seat.
- Take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.
- For Group II and Group III child seats, ensure that the guide device mounted on the child seat headrest are in front of the seat belt anchorage point.

When install a child seat using any passenger seat, take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.

Fixing points for a child seat

Lower fixing points for the child seat



013D11AFAF23

There are 4 lower fixing points for the child seat in the clearance between the rear seat backrest and the seat cushion. Remove the fixing point trim cover first before use.

Top tether strap fixing point for the child seat



1BDF2AFFAA6D

There are 2 fixing points for the child seat top tether strap on the rear side of rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Fixing points for the child seat are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by the correctly fitted child seat. Under no circumstances should they be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Recommended child seat type

ISOFIX and i-Size are mounting systems for car child seats based on international standards. In the user's country, the ECE R44 and ECE R129 norms apply to child seats, both of which are applicable at the same time. ECE R44 classifies child seats into the weight group and ECE R129 into the height group. Only child seats that comply with the standards are allowed to be used in the vehicles.

Weight group

Group	Weight (kg)	Age
Group 0	Maximum 10	0 to 9 months old
Group 0+	Maximum 13	0 to 2 years old
Group I	9 to 18	9 months to 4 years old
Group II	15 to 25	4 to 7 years old
Group III	22 to 36	6 to 12 years old
Rearward-facing child seat, weight group 0/0+/ Ⅰ Forward-facing child seat, weight group Ⅰ. Cushioned child seat, weight group Ⅱ/Ⅲ.		

Height group

Child seats classified according to height must comply with the requirements of the ECE R129 norm regarding installation and safety. Refer to the instructions supplied with the child seats or consult the manufacturer of the child seats for the specific height classification and applicable seats.

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Installation method
Group 0+/I	Joie	Spin 360	ISOFIX + support legs

⚠ WARNING

For children weighing no more than 18 kg (3 years old for reference), the child seat must be rearward-facing mounted.

ℹ NOTICE

For optimum protection, use the recommended child seat type, including rear and lap belt guides.

Not every child is suitable for choosing a child seat in weight group, and likewise not every child seat is suitable for your vehicle. It is therefore important to check that a child sits properly in the child seat and that the child seat is securely fastened in the vehicle.

Installation of child seat

When installing a child seat, you must use a child seat that is appropriate for the child's age, weight and size to restrain an infant or a child in the seat.

Applicability information of child seat for different seat positions

Group	Seat position			
	Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
	Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row outside	Rear-row middle
Group 0	X	U	U	U
Group 0+	X	U	U	U
Group I	X	U	U	U
Group II	X	U	U	U
Group III	X	U	U	U

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

U - this seat is suitable for universal child restraint system certified under this weight group.

X - this seat is not suitable for use with child restraint systems in this weight group.

Please do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

This places the child passenger too close to the airbag. In the event of airbag deployment this can cause severe injury or even death to the child passenger.

If the child seat must be installed on a front passenger seat under special circumstances, please pay attention to the following points:

› Please be sure to turn off the front passenger airbag switch, otherwise it will cause serious danger to children when the airbag deploys.(▷ Page 238)

› When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, please adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

Applicability information of ISOFIX child seat

Group	Size	Fixing module	ISOFIX position
			Rear-row outside
Portable bed	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
Group 0	E	ISO/R1	IL
Group 0+	E	ISO/R1	IL
	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL
Group I	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

IUF - this seat is suitable for general forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system approved for the weight group;

IL - this seat is suitable for special ISOFIX child restraint system on the list; Such restraint systems may be special, restricted or semi-general.

X - ISOFIX position is not suitable for use with this weight group and/or ISOFIX child restraint system of this size.

Applicability information of i-Size child seat

Seat position			
Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
Front passenger side airbag ON	Front passenger side airbag OFF	Rear-row outside	Rear-row middle
X	X	i-U	X

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

i-U - suitable for forward-facing or rear-facing i-Size child seats.

X - this position is not suitable for i-Size child seats.

Child seat installed with the seat belt

1. When a child seat is installed on the front seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the interior trim), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
2. When a child seat is installed on the rear seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the front seat), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
3. If necessary, adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
4. Pull out the shoulder belt, move the belt along the indicated route on the child seat and insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
5. With your body weight pressing down on the child seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract and tighten. There must be no signs of slack to the shoulder belt.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

⚠ CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

Child seats installed with the child seat fixing device

1. When a child seat is installed on the rear seat, if necessary (for example, the child seat interferes with the front seat), the front seat can be adjusted forward and backward or the backrest angle can be adjusted.
2. If necessary, adjust or remove the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
3. Slide the child seat lock mechanism into the lower fixing point, and ensure that the two ISOFIX lock mechanisms are securely fixed.
4. When fixing the top tether strap, refer to the instruction manual of the child seat.
5. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

⚠ CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

⚠ WARNING

› If the child seat is equipped with a top tether strap, tighten the top tether strap according to the installation instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.

Otherwise, severe injury or even death may be caused in the event of emergency braking or collision.

› Do not lower the headrest after fastening the child seat top tether strap to its fixing point.

Otherwise, it may come into contact with the top tether strap and loosen the strap as a result. In the event of emergency braking or collision, this can cause the child seat to turn, bringing severe injuries or even death.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The vehicle anti-theft system helps to keep your vehicle and valuables from being stolen. The vehicle anti-theft system will emit audible and visual alarm if someone tries to enter the vehicle by force.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the vehicle anti-theft system.

Instructions

System activation

1. After the door is successfully locked by the button on the key, PEPS or the mechanical key, the emergency flasher flashes once, and the vehicle enters the pre-arm state.

   In the pre-arm state, you can still operate the vehicle without triggering the anti-theft alarm.

2. After the pre-arm state lasts for about 15 seconds, the vehicle will automatically enter the armed state and the vehicle anti-theft function will be activated.

⚠ CAUTION

Please check whether all the vehicle doors, tailgate and engine hood are completely closed. Otherwise, the vehicle anti-theft system cannot be activated.

ℹ NOTICE

The central control button will fail in the armed state of the anti-theft state of the vehicle.

Alarm trigger condition

In the armed state, the following actions can trigger an alarm:

- The engine hood is open.
- Use the mechanical key to open the vehicle doors.
- A door or the tailgate is forcibly opened.

Alarm cancellation

After triggering the anti-theft alarm of the vehicle, the alarm can be reset by the following operations:

- Set the power supply to the ON mode.
- Start the vehicle successfully.

› When the power supply is in OFF mode, unlock the doors or the tailgate via the button on the key or the PEPS.

System off

The vehicle doors and the tailgate are unlocked via the key button or the PEPS. The emergency flasher flashes twice and the vehicle anti-theft function is off.

Emergency shut-off system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Emergency cut-off system

When the impact sensor detects a certain degree of impact, the system will cut off the high voltage current and fuel supply, and minimize the danger caused by electric shock and fuel leakage.

If the emergency cut-off system is activated, the vehicle cannot be restarted. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Event data recorder (EDR)

System description

The vehicle is equipped with the event data recorder (EDR).

The event data recorder (EDR) is mainly used to record data related to the vehicle dynamic system and safety system when a vehicle collision happens in order to help understand the operation conditions of the vehicle system. However, since collision severity and type vary, EDR may not record the data.

NOTICE

EDR records data only when a vehicle meets a major collision. When the vehicle runs normally, EDR does not record data.

Data reading

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties (such as law enforcement agencies) can use the CANoe device to connect laptops and on-board diagnostic connectors and access EDR to read the data recorded in EDR.

The data reading device can be purchased from the CANoe software vendor.

The data items recorded by EDR and their purposes are as follows:

Data item	Purpose
Longitudinal delta-V	To record the vehicle longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	To record the maximum longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Time to reach maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	To record the time to reach the maximum longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Vehicle speed	To record the vehicle speed during collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Service brake, on or off	To record the brake pedal state during collision
Driver seat belt state	To record the driver seat belt state during collision
Accelerator pedal position, percentage of wide open position	To record the accelerator pedal position during collision
RPM	To record engine revolutions per minute during collision
Power-on cycle in event	To record the power-on cycle in the event during collision
Power-on cycle when reading	To record the power-on cycle when reading during collision
Event data logging complete status	To record the event data logging state during collision
Time interval between this event and the previous event	To record the time interval between this event and the previous event during collision
Vehicle identification number	To record the vehicle identification number during collision
ECU hardware number of EDR data	To record the ECU hardware number of EDR data during collision
ECU serial number of EDR data	To record the ECU serial number of EDR data during collision
ECU software number of EDR data	To record the ECU software number of EDR data during collision
Longitudinal acceleration	To record the vehicle longitudinal acceleration value during collision
Lateral acceleration	To record the vehicle lateral acceleration value during collision
Lateral acceleration delta-V	To record the vehicle lateral acceleration delta-V during collision
Maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V	To record the maximum lateral acceleration delta-V during collision

Data item	Purpose
Square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	To record the square of the maximum resultant delta-V
Time to reach maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V	To record time to reach maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V
Time to reach maximum recorded resultant delta-V	To record time to reach maximum recorded resultant delta-V
Yaw angle speed	To record the yaw angle speed of the vehicle
Steering angle	To record the steering angle of the steering wheel before collision
Tend	To record the destination of the collision event
Year	To record time information inside the vehicle
Month	To record time information inside the vehicle
Day	To record time information inside the vehicle
Hour	To record time information inside the vehicle
Minute	To record time information inside the vehicle
Second	To record time information inside the vehicle
Gear position	To record the current gear position status during collision
Engine throttle position, percentage of fully open position	To record the engine throttle position before collision
Parking system status	To record the status of the parking system before collision
Turn signal switch status	To record the turn signal switch status before collision
Driver seat belt pretensioner deployment time	To record the deployment time of the driver's seat belt pretensioner during collision
Driver frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	To record the deployment time of the driver's frontal airbag during collision (first stage)
Driver side airbag deployment time	To record the deployment time of the driver's side airbag during collision
Driver side curtain deployment time	To record the driver side curtain deployment time during collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Front passenger seat belt status	To record the status of the front passenger seat belt during collision
Front passenger seat belt pretensioner deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger seat belt pretensioner during collision
Front passenger frontal airbag suppression status	To record the suppression status of the front passenger airbag during collision
Front passenger frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	To record the deployment time of front passenger airbags during collision (first stage)
Front passenger side airbag deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger side airbags during collision
Front passenger side curtain deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger side curtain during collision
Occupant protection system alarm status	To record the alarm status of the passenger protection system during collision
Tyre pressure monitoring system alarm status	To record the tyre pressure monitoring system alarm status before collision
Brake system alarm status	To record the brake system alarm status before collision
Cruise control system status	To record the status of the cruise control system before collision
Adaptive cruise control system status	To record the adaptive cruise control system status before collision
Anti-lock brake system status	To record the status of the anti-lock brake system before collision
Auto emergency braking system status	To record the automatic emergency braking system status before collision
Electronic stability control system status	To record the electronic stability control system status before collision
Traction control system status	To record the traction control system status before collision

Data item	Purpose
Synchronous time before the event	To record the synchronous time before the event during collision

Data disclosure

Any data recorded by EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following circumstances:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or the lessee.
- To be used in a lawsuit at the official request of the police, court, or government department.

However, if necessary, the data recorded by EDR will be used to:

- Research and develop the vehicle safety performance.
- For R&D purpose, data is disclosed to the third parties without disclosing specific information about the owners and their vehicles.

5 Emergency

On-board tools..... 260
Vehicle lifting..... 261
Spare tyre 262
Spare tyre replacement..... 265
In the case of a vehicle accident
..... 269
Jump start 273
Engine overheating 275
Towing..... 277
Emergency rescue system... 281

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Location of on-board tools

Reflective vest and on-board document packages are placed in the glove box on the passenger side.

Jacks, on-board tool kits, etc. are placed under the luggage compartment cover, and you can see them by opening the cover.

⚠ CAUTION

› The driver must be familiar with the storage location and instructions of the on-board tools in order to cope with emergency.

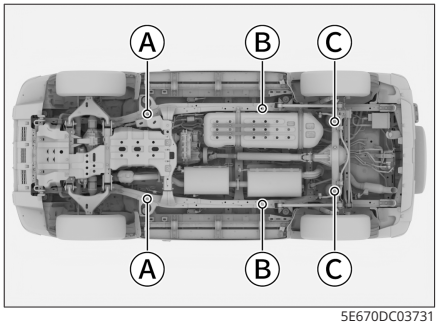
› And the driver must return the on-board tools to their designated positions after use, and fix them securely. Random placement may cause accidents.

› The jack provided with the vehicle is a special tool for this vehicle. Do not apply this jack to other vehicles, and do not apply the jacks designed for other vehicles to your vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle lifting position



5E670DC03731

Ⓐ Lifter/Jack lifting position

Ⓑ Lifter lifting position

Ⓒ Jack lifting position

The vehicle lifting position is shown in the above figure.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not operate a vehicle that is not properly supported, as this may cause serious damage, personal injury, or death.

› If the vehicle needs to be lifted, the lifting tool must be placed against the lifting point. Lifting at any other point may cause damage to the vehicle or cause accidents.

› When using a lifting tool to lift the vehicle, do not place any part of your body under the vehicle to avoid injury.

⚠ CAUTION

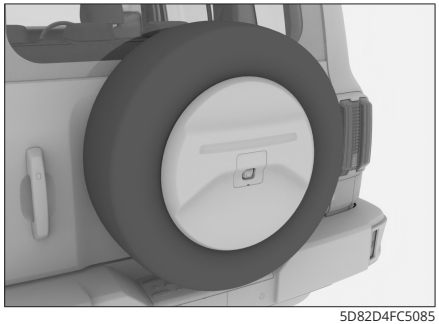
When placing the jack, be careful not to bump into the pipeline. Otherwise, the pipeline leakage may be caused to damage the vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Spare tyre introduction

The spare tyre is hung on the tailgate and its position is shown in the figure.



5D82D4FC5085

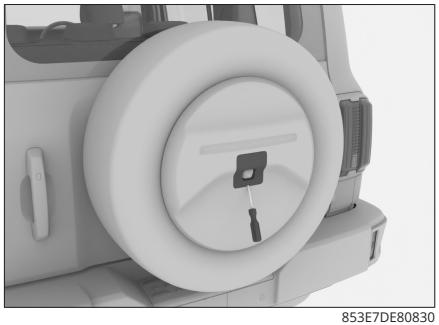
CAUTION

› Due to low frequency of use and less friction with the ground, friction coefficients of four tyres will be slightly different after the spare tyre is put on, so drive carefully. It is recommended that you repair the standard tyre as soon as possible and replace the spare tyre.

› Regularly check the state of the spare tyre such as tyre pressure, cracks and bulges, etc., to ensure that the spare tyre is available for use in case of a failure.

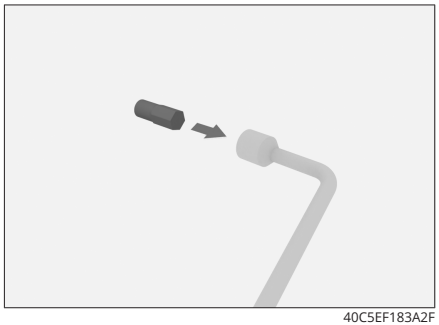
Removing and restoring

1. Close the tailgate and use a flathead screwdriver to open the cover plate on the spare-tyre cover.



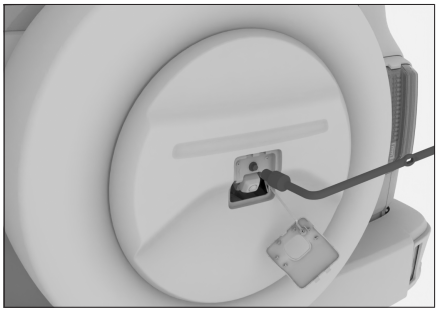
853E7DE80830

2. Install the rear-mounted spare tyre cover nut wrench into the wheel nut wrench.



40C5EF183A2F

3. Using the assembled combination tool, unscrew the bolt under the cover plate counterclockwise and remove it, and then remove the spare tyre cover.



065737368BC7

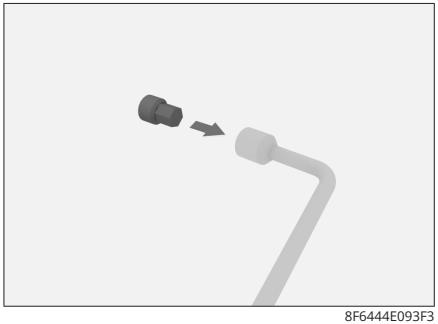
4. Insert the mechanical key into spare tyre lock cylinder, and then the spare tyre lock cylinder can be pulled out.

   For how to get the mechanical key, see Taking Out the Mechanical Key. (▷ Page 20)



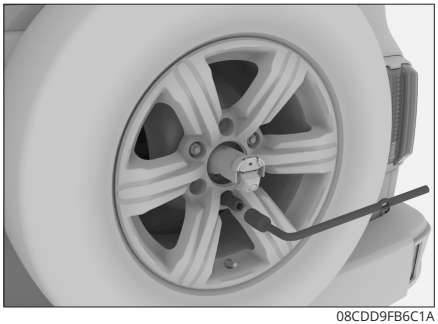
776BD54E71CF

5. Install the removal socket into the wheel nut wrench.



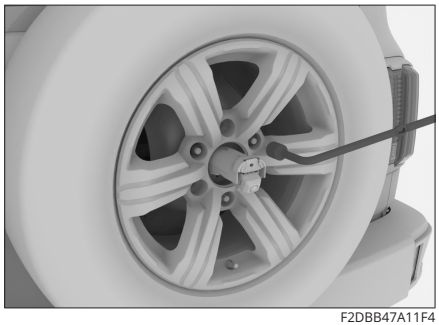
8F6444E093F3

6. Using the assembled combination tool, loosen the nut at the spare tyre lock cylinder counterclockwise and remove it.



08CDD9FB6C1A

7. Use a wheel nut wrench to loosen and remove the spare tyre fixing nut counterclockwise, and then remove the spare tyre.



F2DBB47A11F4

When placing the spare tyre on the ground, make sure the rim of the spare tyre faces up to avoid scratches.

8. Put the spare tyre back in the reverse order of removal.

NOTICE

When putting the spare tyre back, hold the lock cylinder by hand to remove the key after the spare tyre lock cylinder is installed; otherwise the key will get stuck when being removed and reinserted.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre failure symptom

When any of the following situations occur, check if the tyres are punctured or have gone flat:

- The steering wheel shakes.
- The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

⚠ CAUTION

- If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or sudden steering is prohibited. Otherwise, it may lead the vehicle to go out of control.
- If there is a flat tyre, replace with the spare tyre immediately. Continuing driving with a flat tyre for any reason can cause instability in your drive and lead to an accident. In addition, doing so can cause damage to rims, wheels, the suspension and the vehicle body.

Preparation for spare tyre replacement

1. All passengers must exit the vehicle.
2. Park the vehicle at a hard, flat place where it will not impede the normal flow of traffic and where you will be able to work safely.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Shut down the vehicle.

   shift to P gear and shut down the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not lift the vehicle with the jack when the gear is in N. Otherwise, the jack will not be able to stably support the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

5. Turn on the emergency flashers and place the warning triangle.
6. Prepare the spare tyre, the jack, the jack adjustment lever, the wheel nut wrench and the wheel chock.

⚠ CAUTION

- You need to use the wheel chock together with the jack.

› The wheel chock can be purchased at authorised service centre. Please contact the authorised service centre for the relevant details.

› If you do not have a wheel chock handy, you can use a piece of rock large enough to stabilize the tyre instead.

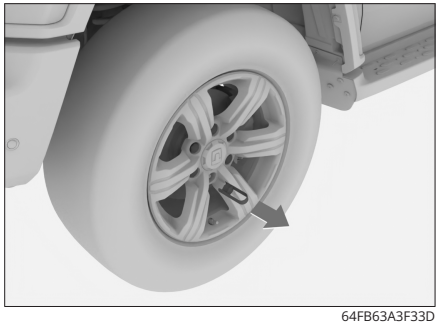
Method for spare tyre replacement

Removal of the defective tyre

1. Secure the tyre.

   Be sure to use suitable tyre chock against the tyre, and place the tyre chocks on both sides of the tyre in the diagonal direction of the tyre to be replaced.

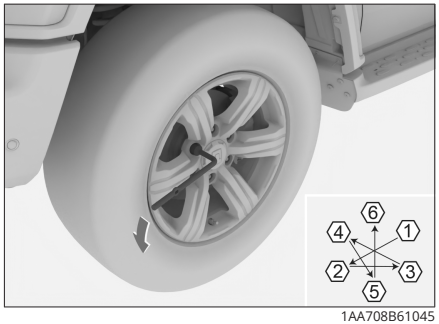
2. Remove the wheel nut trim cover.



64FB63A3F33D

   For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, use the wheel nut trim cover removal tool supplied with the vehicle to remove the wheel nut trim covers in turn.

3. Loosen the nuts.



1AA708B61045

   Loosen the nut slightly counterclockwise (approx. 1 turn) in the order shown using the wheel nut wrench.

4. Place the jack under the lifting position and adjust the jack position and height to ensure that the jack is stably held in the lifting position. For lifting position, see "Vehicle lifting". (▷ Page 261)

⚠ CAUTION

You must observe the followings when using the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may shift, resulting in serious injury:

› Shut down the vehicle.

› Do not use the jack when there are passengers inside the vehicle.

› The jack must be placed on a flat, hard ground.

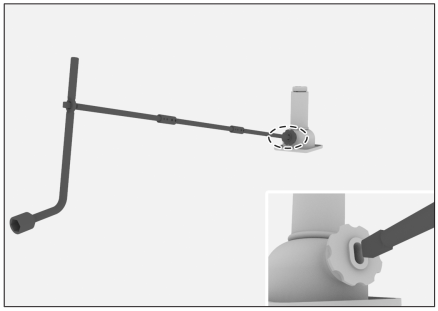
› Do not place any objects on the top or bottom of the jack.

› The jack should be lifted to a height at which the tyre can be changed.

› After lifting the vehicle by the jack, do not enter under the vehicle.

› When lowering the vehicle, pay attention to the surroundings to avoid injury to the operator and other individuals.

5. Install the spare tyre lifter rocker.



1A5FAE0BA55B

Combine the front, middle and rear sections of spare tyre lifter rocker with the wheel nut wrench into the form as shown in the figure. Then, insert the spare tyre lifter rocker into the jack end hole.

6. Raise the vehicle.

Turn the combination tool clockwise to bring the tyre slightly off the ground.

⚠ CAUTION

› When using the jack, you should ensure that the jack adjustment lever should be coaxial with the rotation centre of the jack screw.

› During operation, you should first lift the vehicle up slightly. Carefully check whether everything is normal, and then continue raising the vehicle.

7. Remove all fixing nuts and remove the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION

› When placing the tyre on the ground, keep the spokes facing upwards to avoid damage.

› Before installing the spare tyre, it is best to place the removed tyre at the bottom of the vehicle to avoid the displacement of the jack, causing an accident.

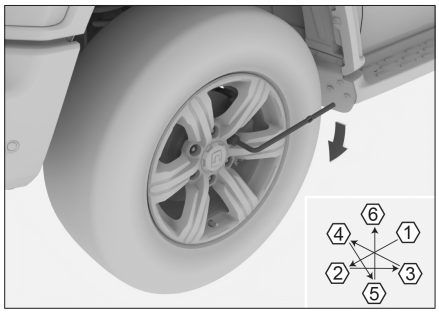
Installation of the spare tyre

1. Remove any foreign object from the wheel mounting surface.

Before installing the spare tyre, remove the foreign object from the wheel mounting surface; otherwise the wheel nut may loosen during the driving process, thus causing the wheel disengagement.

2. Install the spare tyre and tighten the nuts with approximately the same force, and make sure that the nut is in full contact with the wheel mounting surface.
3. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack counterclockwise.

4. Tighten the wheel nuts 2 to 3 times in the order indicated in the figure.



7FED8223FFCD

Tightening torque:120±10 N·m

NOTICE

After replacing the spare tyre, tighten the nut to the tightening torque as soon as possible using a torque wrench. Otherwise the wheel nut is easy to be loose or fall off, which may lead to serious casualties.

5. For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, install the wheel nut trim covers.
6. Put the defective tyre in where the spare tyre is placed and fix it. Put all the tools into specified place and secure them.

WARNING

Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please send it to the authorised service centre for treatment.

CAUTION

- Do not use damaged, cracked or deformed nuts and wheels.
- Fix the nuts when using the wheel nut wrench; otherwise, the nuts are likely to be disengaged while screwed, resulting in personal injury.
- Do not step on the wheel nut wrench or use other tools to over-tighten the nuts. Otherwise, the wheel nuts may be damaged.
- When installing the nuts, do not apply any lubricant or grease. If the nuts are screwed excessively, the nuts and the wheels are likely to be damaged; if the nuts are loosened, the wheels are likely to be disengaged during driving, resulting in an accident.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

In the case of a vehicle accident

In case of a vehicle accident

When the vehicle is forced to stop on road because of traffic incidents or vehicle breakdown, in order to warn other vehicles, take the following measures:

› Turn on the hazard warning lights.

› Place the warning triangle behind your vehicle in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury and death when a traffic accident occurs, please observe the following precautions:

› If bare wires are detected inside or outside vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

› Do not touch the high-voltage components, orange high-voltage cables and their connectors. Otherwise, serious injuries or death caused by electric shock may occur.

› If there is a liquid leakage, do not touch such liquid. It may be a liquid leaking from the traction battery pack. If the skin or eyes are inadvertently exposed to the liquid, rinse with plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately to avoid further injury.

› If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a potential fire risk. In this case, place the vehicle in a safe area for monitoring to prevent fire.

› If you are not sure whether the vehicle is damaged or safe, stay away from the vehicle as soon as possible.

› When an accident causes a fire on the vehicle, use a special fire extinguisher for electrical fires to extinguish the fire. Use of water or improper fire extinguishers may result in serious injuries or death due to electric shock.

In case of a vehicle fire accident

If heavy smoke emits from the vehicle or a fire accident occurs, you should pull over to a sparsely populated place immediately, turn off the power (ignition) supply switch, and evacuate passengers away from the vehicle quickly. Under the condition of ensuring personal safety, perform the following operations:

- Call the police according to the on-site situation.
- If you can confirm that the fire is small and does not involve a high-voltage system, you can try to use a vehicle fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire in time; if the fire is large or the origin of fire is near the traction battery, immediately move away from the vehicle and stand to the upwind position, and notify the firefighters immediately. Do not use water to extinguish the fire by yourself to prevent the risk of electric shock.
- Anyone inhaling heavy smoke accidentally should be transferred for medical attention as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- The burning of lithium batteries will produce high temperature and harmful gases, so please stay away from the burning vehicle as much as possible.
- Please do not touch any liquid leaked from the traction battery. In case of contact with skin or eyes accidentally, please rinse it immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice in time to avoid further injury.
- If firefighters use water to extinguish the fire, please do not touch the water on the ground to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Due to the possibility of reburning of the lithium battery, even if the open fire is extinguished, do not approach the vehicle rashly and note whether the vehicle still has heavy smoke or open fire.

⚠ WARNING

Fire accidents pose a serious threat to your life and property. Make sure to follow the methods below to prevent fire accidents:

- Do not store flammable and explosive substances in the vehicle.

  During the hot season when the sun is shining, the interior of the vehicle is very hot, and if flammable and explosive items such as lighters, perfume and alcohol are stored in the vehicle, they can easily cause a fire or even an explosion.
- Do not leave a clear bottle with unfinished water in the vehicle.

When exposed to the sun, especially in the hot season, a clear water bottle resembles a convex lens, and the converging sunlight can easily cause burns to the interiors of the vehicle or even cause a fire.

› Do not dispose of cigarette butts at will.

Stub out cigarette butts and properly dispose of them.

› Do not modify the vehicle wiring or install additional electrical appliances.

The addition of other high-powered electrical appliances (lights, speakers, etc.) can cause an excessive load on the wiring, which can easily lead to overheating and even a fire. Do not use fuses of different colours or amperage or replace fuses with other metal wires.

› Always carry a fire extinguisher on your vehicle and know how to use it.

Check and replace the fire extinguisher on a regular basis to ensure its reliability.

› Visit the authorised service centre on schedule for inspection and maintenance.

Treatment of vehicle immersion accident

To avoid vehicle immersion, we suggest that when the early warning is issued for rainstorms, floods and other severe conditions, the vehicle can be parked on higher terrain in advance, not the low-lying parking lots and underground garages with unreasonable design.

When the vehicle is partially or completely immersed in water, the vehicle will not have a greater risk of electric shock due to immersion in water, provided that the body and chassis are not damaged. However, professional rescue personnel must still wear the necessary personal protective equipment to handle flooded vehicles. After the vehicle is removed from the water, the battery safety switch should be disconnected in time.

⚠ WARNING

Handling a flooded vehicle without the necessary personal protective equipment may result in serious personal injury or death.

A vehicle getting stuck or bottoming out

When travelling in snow, mud and sand, the vehicle is easy to get stuck or bottom out. Therefore, you should drive carefully.

If the vehicle gets stuck, you can try to operate as below:

1. Shift to the N gear position, apply the parking brake, and switch the power supply to OFF mode.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tyres.
3. Place wood blocks, stones or other materials to help improve the tyre adhesion.
4. Restart the vehicle with the proper driving mode selected.
5. Release the parking brake and speed up carefully to get the vehicle out of the pit.

WARNING

While freeing the vehicle, pay attention to the following:

- Make sure that the surrounding area is clear and free from any other vehicles, objects, or persons.
- Please be especially careful, considering that the vehicle will suddenly rush forwards or backwards when the vehicle gets out from the pit.
- Check whether there are larger objects such as stones in the mud or snow when getting the vehicle out of mud or snow. Please remove them timely to avoid damage to the vehicle body and sensors during getting out.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out, please contact professional rescue teams or service providers if the vehicle cannot get out of the trap by the methods above. Dragging the vehicle unprofessionally for rescue is prohibited.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions during rescue to avoid potential vehicle damage and ensure personal safety.

- When using a tow hook for towing, securely fasten a recovery blanket in the middle of the tow rope. This precaution prevents the tow hook or rope from breaking and rebounding, thus averting potential vehicle damage and ensuring personal safety.
- Never drag the vehicle from the side or vertically, with the best angle of the tow hook within the range of 5° up and down and 25° left and right.
- Never drag the vehicle during the launch control. During towing, the initial speed should not exceed 5 km/h (start off slowly until the tow rope is taut). The maximum distance of towing should not exceed 50 m.
- When using a tow hook for towing, ensure that the drag or towing force does not surpass the weight of the vehicle.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery

- The vehicle cannot be started.
- Headlamps are darker than normal.
- The horn cannot give a sound or the sound is weak.

Jump start method

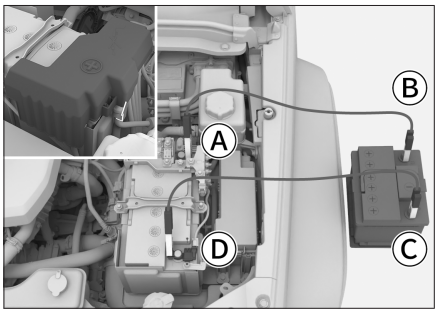
If you cannot start the vehicle due to undervoltage battery, you can connect the battery of another vehicle by a jumper cable to start the vehicle.

The wire cross-section of jumper cable is no less than 25 mm^2.

CAUTION

- Not all vehicle batteries can be used. The jump start can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

1. Connect the booster cables in the following order.



68D60A217DD8

Ⓐ Positive terminal on vehicle with undervoltage battery⊕

When connecting, open the protective cover on the positive terminal of the battery first.

Ⓑ Positive terminal on battery for rescue vehicle⊕

Ⓒ Negative terminal on battery for rescue vehicle ⊖

Ⓓ Negative terminal on vehicle with undervoltage battery ⊖

2. Recharge the battery.

   Start the rescue vehicle, increase the engine speed slightly, and keep such speed for about 5 minutes to temporarily charge the depleted battery of the vehicle.

3. Start the vehicle with undervoltage battery.

   If you are still unable to start the vehicle, check whether the jumper cable has been connected correctly, and then charge the battery again.

4. Remove the jumper cable.

Once the vehicle is started, remove the jumper cable in an order contrary to the connection.

⚠ WARNING

- During charging or jump start, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion. Be sure to keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injury to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.
- When connecting or removing jumper cables, do not wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.
- Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative terminals.

⚠ CAUTION

If a battery is often undervoltage, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Engine overheating

Preventing from overheating

You can activate or deactivate the off-road thermal management mode through the 【Car】 → 【Drive】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

The engine is prone to overheating when running under high load for a long period of time. Activating the off-road thermal management mode allows the engine cooling to be enabled earlier to prevent or mitigate engine overheating.

Overheating symptoms

NOTICE

Under extreme conditions (dragging, towing, climbing, overloading, etc.), the engine may overheat and the power of the whole vehicle will decrease.

- The coolant temperature indicator is in the red zone.
- The engine accelerates weakly.
- There is steam emanating from the bonnet.
- The A/C compressor may automatically stop working.

Handling methods

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the A/C system and then shut down the engine.
2. Check whether there is steam coming from the bonnet.
   - If there is no steam, open the bonnet.
   - If there is steam, wait until there is no more steam, and then open the bonnet.
3. Check the coolant level.

   Add coolant if the coolant level is too low.

Check for pipeline leakage. If there is any leakage, contact the authorised service centre.

4. Check whether there is any foreign object in the core of the radiator.

   If there is any foreign object, remove it.

5. Start the vehicle and check whether the cooling fan is running. (Confirm whether the fan is running by checking the sound and air flow.)
   - › If the fan is not working, shut down the engine and contact the authorised service centre.
   - › If the fan is working normally, please head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not open the bonnet immediately if steam comes out of the bonnet. Doing so may cause serious injury such as burns.
- › When the radiator is hot, do not open the overflow tank cover. Otherwise, escaping steam or coolant may cause severe injuries such as burns.
- › When opening the overflow tank cover, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Also, open the cover slowly after covering it with a piece of cloth.
- › When the engine is running, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Otherwise, there is a risk of your hands or clothing becoming caught within and of severe injury as a result.
- › Do not add coolant when the engine is overheated. If coolant is suddenly added, it is easy to damage the engine. Add coolant after the engine is completely cooled down.

⚠ CAUTION

If the coolant temperature indicator gets to the red zone again during driving, head to your nearest authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

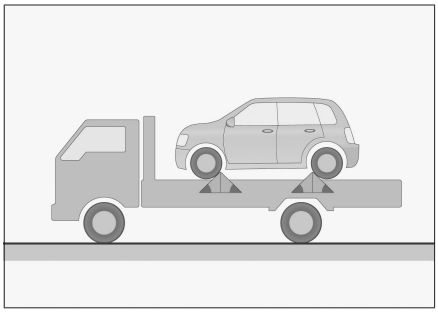
Towing with a professional vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Traction must comply with local regulations regarding trailer towing.

When the vehicle needs to be towed, we suggest an elevating truck or flat truck, and you shall entrust a authorised service centre or a specialized towing company with the traction.

Towing with the flatbed truck

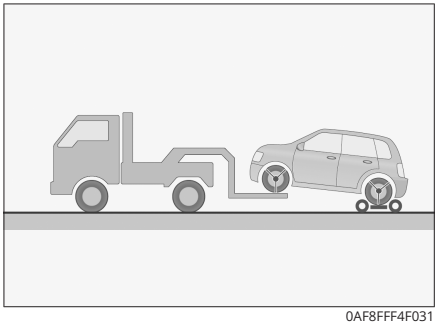


04FD77FA04F8

When using a flatbed truck, you must lock the vehicle firmly.

Towing with the lift truck

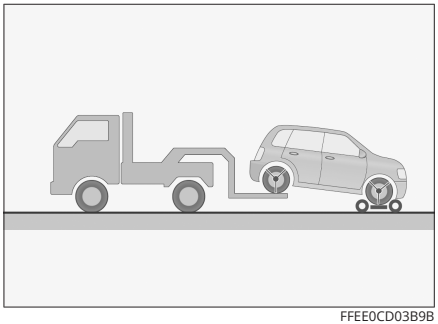
Towing from the front



0AF8FFF4F031

Place the tow truck under the rear wheel and lock firmly.

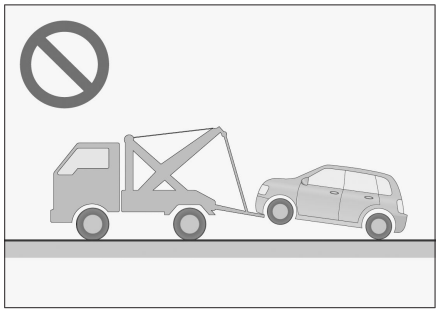
Towing from the rear



FFEE0CD03B9B

Place the tow truck under the front wheel and lock firmly.

Towing with the hoisting type truck is prohibited



9104EBEC04BC

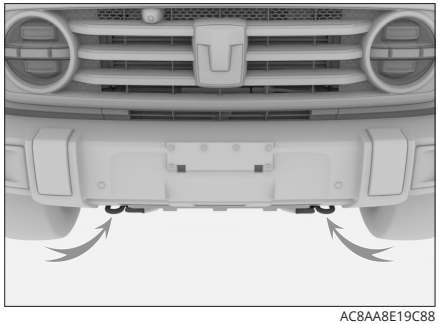
It is forbidden to use a hoisting type truck for towing, otherwise it may damage the vehicle body.

CAUTION

For a 4WD or RWD vehicle, please use a flat truck or a towing trolley during their traction. Traction with two wheels on the ground is forbidden; otherwise, the vehicle will be seriously damaged.

Tow hook

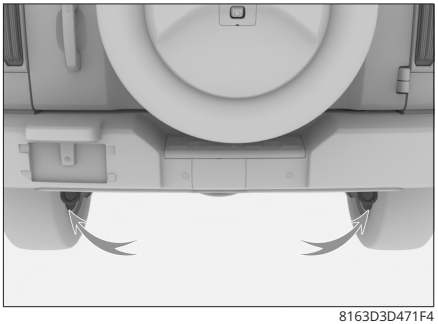
Front tow hook



AC8AA8E19C88

The front tow hook is located in the area of the front end of the chassis.

Rear tow hook



8163D3D471F4

The rear tow hook is located in the area of the rear end of the chassis.

NOTICE

Some models may be provided with one front tow hook and one rear tow hook, depending on the configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Tow rope

The tow rope should be elastic to protect vehicles. It is recommended to use an artificial fibre rope or the rope made of similar elastic materials.

The tow rope can only be installed on the designated tow hook or towing ring of the vehicle.

When installing the tow rope, you should be careful not to damage the vehicle body. The distance between the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle should be within 4 to 10 m.

A recovery blanket should be attached to the centre of the tow rope. For towing at night, a tow rope with reflective materials should be used as much as possible to increase the warning effect.

CAUTION

- You need to purchase the tow rope by yourself.
- Do not use a steel rope to tow as that will damage the bumper.

In case of vehicle failure

When the vehicle fails and a professional towing vehicle is unavailable, use a tow hook to tow the vehicle temporarily. This towing method is only suitable for short distances at low speeds on hard surfaces.

WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

Towing the vehicle

When towing the vehicle, the driver must sit in the vehicle and operate the steering wheel and brake pedal, with the wheels, axles, steering system, brake system, transmission system (transmission, etc.) and lighting system (turn signal light and brake light) in good condition.

The detailed methods are as follows:

1. Start the vehicle and shift to the N gear position.

   If the vehicle cannot be started, set the power supply to ON mode. For automatic transmission vehicles, use the shift lever emergency unlocking device to shift to the N gear position. (▷ Page 111)

   For 4WD vehicles, set the drive mode to AWD mode.

CAUTION

- When you cannot shift the transmission to the N gear position, do not use a tow hook for towing.
- Do not use the tow hook to tow the vehicle in 4L mode.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, release the parking brake and wait for towing.

   Do not tow beyond 50 km. Do not exceed 30 km/h while towing. Exceeding these limits will cause severe transmission damage.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is not started, the assist system will not function. This requires significantly greater effort to steer and apply the brakes. The vehicle speed should be reduced as much as possible during towing.
- During towing, pay attention to the brake lights of the vehicle in front to avoid a loose tow rope.

› Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
› Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Towing other faulty vehicles

1. During towing, turn on the hazard warning lights and follow relevant local laws and regulations.
2. Start off slowly until the tow rope tightens, and then accelerate carefully.

⚠ CAUTION

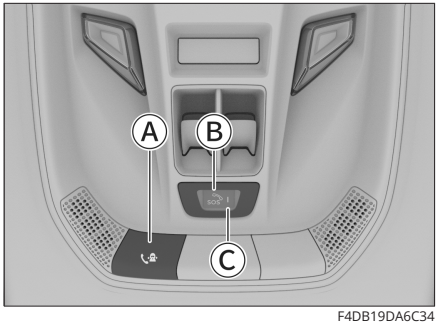
› Do not tow a vehicle heavier than your vehicle to prevent damage to the vehicle.
› Avoid sudden starting off or unstable driving operations to prevent excessive tension acting on the tow hook and the tow rope.
› Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
› Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Button introduction

You can manually activate the emergency rescue system, or the vehicle will automatically trigger an emergency call to the call centre to request help and rescue in the event of a personal injury accident or other emergencies.



F4DB19DA6C34

Ⓐ Fault rescue button ( )

Ⓑ Manual emergency rescue button ( )

Ⓒ Working state indicator light

NOTICE

› This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

› The electromagnetic field intensity of this communication device conforms to *Safety Standard for People to Use Communication Device Healthily* published by National Telecommunications Commission.

Fault rescue

Press and hold the fault rescue button for 0.5 to 10 seconds and then release it to trigger fault rescue; through fault rescue, vehicle networking problem consultation and road rescue can be carried out.

During the call, press and hold the fault rescue button for 0.5 to 10 seconds and then release it to end the rescue call.

NOTICE

When pressing and holding the fault rescue button to call, keep the button pressed for 0.5 to 10 seconds. If the time is too short or too long, the call cannot be triggered.

When you need rescue, please do the following first:

1. Please park your vehicle in a safe area and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. On the premise of ensuring your own safety, please set up a warning triangle behind the vehicle after wearing a reflective vest.
3. You and the passengers in the vehicle move to a safe area. Do not stay in the vehicle.
4. You can contact the rescue centre through the above methods.

Manual emergency rescue

Press and hold the manual emergency rescue button SOS for 0.5 to 4 seconds and then release it to trigger an emergency rescue call. The system will automatically send the vehicle status information (location, time, vehicle data, etc.) related to the rescue service to the rescue centre, and the multimedia display will expand the call interface. During the call, press and hold the manual emergency rescue button SOS for 0.5 to 4 seconds and then release it to end the emergency rescue call.

WARNING

Press the cover to open it, and you can manually operate the emergency rescue button. When you do not need to manually operate the emergency rescue button, please close the cover.

CAUTION

When manually pressing and holding the button SOS to make a call, hold the button within 0.5 to 4 seconds. Pressing the button too short or too long cannot trigger the call.

NOTICE

The manual emergency rescue button SOS is only used in emergency situations, such as human injury, illness or threat to the passengers.

Auto emergency rescue

When the collision occurs (the airbags deploy), an emergency rescue call will automatically trigger. The system automatically send the vehicle status information (location, time, vehicle data, etc.) related to the rescue service to the rescue centre. The multimedia display screen will expand the call interface. You cannot manually stop it when calling. Only the rescue centre has the authority to end the call. After the emergency rescue call is triggered, the rescue centre will accept the vehicle's rescue request as soon as possible.

NOTICE

› Avoid to trigger the emergency rescue call arbitrarily and frequently.

› After completing the emergency call, the rescue centre will call back to the vehicle in an emergency and answer it automatically.

› The auto emergency call function is not triggered by every accident. When you can manually make an emergency call, do not wait for the system to trigger the automatic call. You should manually make a call to the rescue centre immediately to avoid delaying the response time.

⚠ CAUTION

Under the influence of many factors, the emergency rescue call will not work in following situations (including but not limited to):

› Emergency rescue call will not be triggered when the emergency call system is faulty or damaged.

› You will not be able to make a normal rescue call to the customer service due to damaged audio device, or damage to or false connection of the wiring harness connecting the emergency call system or audio device.

› Airbags are not deployed in slight collision or other abnormal situations, the rescue call cannot be triggered automatically. At this point, you can make an emergency rescue call through triggering it manually or other ways.

› The emergency rescue call will not be manually activated if the emergency rescue button is damaged.

› The emergency rescue call will not be activated under the condition of weak signal of mobile network, disturbance, hide and so on.

› When the GPS device is damaged or in weak signal area (such as underground garage, tunnel or mountain area), the vehicle position cannot be located.

› After the vehicle is powered off, the emergency help call will not be activated.

› The emergency rescue call cannot be used due to force majeure factors such as riot, fire, flood, storm, explosion, war, government action, judicial administrative department command, and social environment, etc.

› Emergency rescue service is not available due to viruses, Trojan horses or other malicious programs contained in other software you have downloaded and installed or other websites you have visited that threaten the security of your device and data.

› Other objective factors lead to the unavailability of emergency rescue calls.

Emergency rescue system working indicator light

The working state indicator light will indicate the system state and call state accordingly.

Indicator light state	State description
Off	System in the sleep state, or vehicle power supply in OFF mode
Orange light always on	The system is restarting.
Green light always on	The system is working properly.
Green light flashing	The system is in a call state.
Red light always on	The system fails in self-test and is in an error state.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the emergency call system.

NOTICE

For daily use, please observe the following recommendations:

› Regularly check whether the IOV system is running normally. A green IOV indicator light indicates that the system is normal. If there is a breakdown, please go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair in time.

› It is recommended that the internal battery of the emergency call system will be replaced at least once every 3 years. If the instrument panel prompts that please replace the emergency calling system spare battery, go to the authorised service centre promptly to replace it.

6 Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance 286
Engine compartment 287
Safety labels and signs 293
Part replacement 295
Vehicle maintenance 300

Necessity of vehicle maintenance

Vehicle maintenance, a health diagnosis of the vehicle, can reduce the trouble of repairing the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in use, its components and parts will inevitably wear out. To ensure safe driving conditions, regular inspections, maintenance, and repairs are required to maintain and restore vehicle performance.

Vehicle maintenance making you drive more safely

During the maintenance, you can carry out necessary preventive maintenance according to the use of the components and parts, so that you can safely drive the vehicle before the next maintenance.

Extending the service life of the vehicle and reducing the use cost of the vehicle

Components and parts such as brake linings and tyres, etc. cannot be used permanently, as they will gradually wear out while in use. Use of components and parts that exceed the wear limit is likely to cause vehicle breakdown and even lead to traffic accidents. Therefore, it is necessary to conduct regular maintenance.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

⚠ WARNING

- The engine compartment is a hazardous area for operation and must be handled with extreme caution!
- To avoid personal injury, do not touch high-voltage components, cables and connectors.
- Never carry out relevant inspection work when the vehicle is started, because rotating parts (such as radiator fans), high-voltage components, power systems, etc. may lead to other dangers.
- When performing oils inspection and filling operations, observe the following requirements; otherwise burns or fire may occur:

  The vehicle is shut down.

  The parking brake is applied.

  Let the engine and the drive motor cool completely.

  Keep children away from the engine compartment.

  Do not splash oils on the engine.

  Do not allow water to come into contact with the engine compartment.
- When performing operations related to the fuel system, observe the following precautions; otherwise fire may occur:

  Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

  Do not smoke.

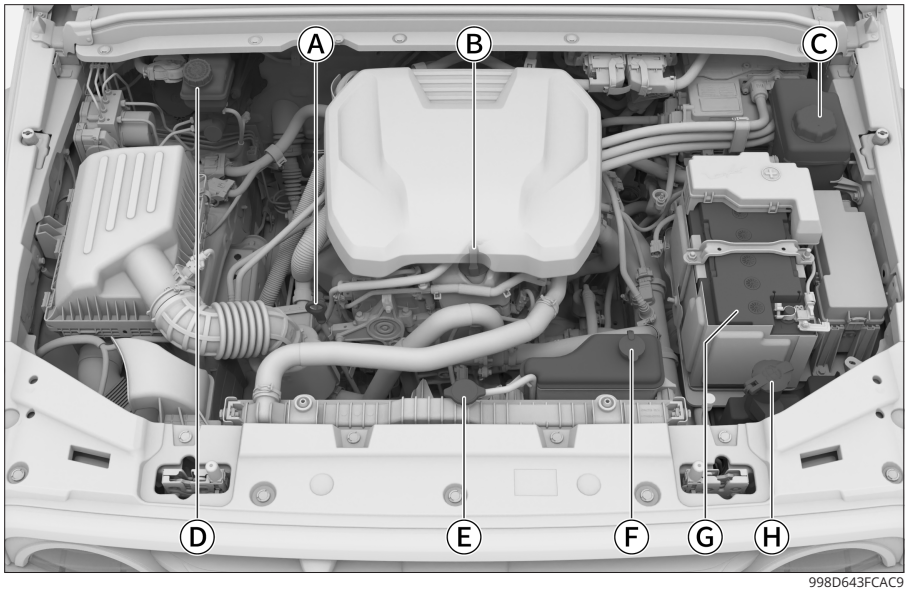
  Do not operate near open flames.

⚠ CAUTION

When adding oils, be careful not to misuse them. Otherwise, serious functional defects or damages to vehicle parts may be caused.

Fluid level

Vehicle equipped with E20NA engine

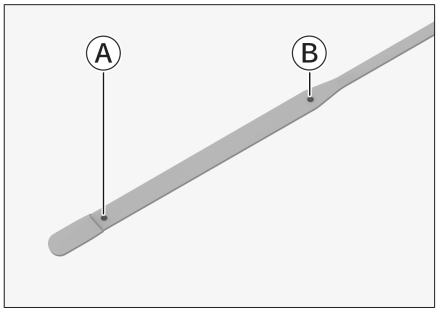


998D643FCAC9

Ⓐ Engine oil dipstick
Ⓑ Engine oil filler cap
Ⓒ Motor battery coolant overflow tank
Ⓓ Brake fluid tank
Ⓔ Radiator cap
Ⓕ Engine coolant overflow tank
Ⓖ Battery
Ⓗ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Engine oil

Check



8F3D41CDBC64

Ⓐ Lower limit

Ⓑ Upper limit

Stop the vehicle on flat ground. Warm up the engine to normal water temperatures, and then switch the power supply to OFF mode. Wait for 10 minutes before conducting the engine oil level check.

The oil level should be between the maximum and minimum levels marked on the oil dipstick.

If the engine oil level is close to or lower than the minimum level marked, add engine oil until it is at the level between the maximum and minimum levels marked.

NOTICE

- The shape of the oil dipstick varies depending on the engine.
- Check that the engine oil level is not less than 1/3 of the dipstick scale (between the upper limit and the lower limit) before the vehicle climbs an extreme slope; otherwise, add engine oil.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, if you contact or get close to the rotating parts such as the belt or the fan, your hands, clothing, tools and so on may be trapped into the rotating parts, resulting in accidents.
- Take care to prevent burns when checking or adding engine oil.
- Keep the engine oil in a safe place when it is not in use. Engine oil that leaks into the ground or enters into bodies of water causes environmental pollution.

Filling

Open the engine oil filler cap, and slowly pour the oil so as to avoid oil spill. Any oil overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled oil may cause damage to the compartment components.

Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring engine performance and lifespan. Therefore, it is important to use high-quality and purified oil. Please use only engine oil that meets specifications so as to ensure the vehicle performance.

Oil additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives, as additives cannot improve the performance and durability of the engine.

CAUTION

› Therefore, check and replace engine oil on a regular basis. Otherwise, insufficient oil levels or deteriorated engine oil may cause poor lubrication of engine rotation parts, thereby cause sintering and hence damage to the engine.

› The engine oil works for lubrication and cooling. The engine oil level goes down over time even if you are driving normally, as a certain amount of engine oil for lubricating the piston and the valve will also be mixed in the combustion chamber and burned. Engine oil levels may go down depending on the specific driving conditions.

› Do not add excessive engine oil.

Engine/electric drive system coolant

Check

The fluid level in the overflow tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the overflow tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the coolant level is lower than the minimum level marked, add coolant until the coolant level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the cooling system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

When the engine and electric drive system cool down, slowly open the lid to let the pressure out.

If the coolant spills, clean it up immediately to prevent parts or paint from being damaged.

Use only the coolant that meets the specifications.

WARNING

› Never open the overflow tank cover when the engine compartment is at high temperature. There may still be some pressure inside the cooling system. Opening it at this point may cause burns or other injuries when heated coolant spurts out.

CAUTION

› The coolant contains ethylene glycol to lower its freezing point. Indiscriminate disposal may lead to water pollution.

› When changing the engine/electric drive system coolant, contact the authorised service centre.

Brake fluid

Check

The fluid level in the tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum level marked, add new brake fluid until the fluid level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the braking system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in the fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the compartment components.

Only use brake fluid that meets specifications.

CAUTION

Before opening the tank cover, be sure to clean the cover and its surrounding area; otherwise, dust, sand and other foreign objects may be mixed into the brake fluid, resulting in decrease of braking performance or damage to brake components.

WARNING

- Insufficient brake fluid levels can compromise brake performance and increase the risk of an accident.
- Brake fluid is harmful to the human body and corrosive. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water. If you ingest it, go to a hospital immediately.

Windscreen washer fluid

Filling

Open the reservoir cover. Pour in washer fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately.

You should use quality washer fluid for better cleaning capabilities and for anti-freeze protection in cold season.

NOTICE

You should use the washer fluid with enough anti-freeze performance, if the ambient temperature is lower than 0 ℃.

The washer fluid should be placed out of the reach of children to avoid accidental ingestion.

The washer fluid is flammable and should be stored far from source of ignition.

CAUTION

When refilling washer fluid, do not use tap water, soapy water, or other self-made liquids or shoddy products. Only use washer fluid that complies with national standards. Otherwise, issues such as corrosion of the washer motor, damage to the vehicle body paint, or the formation of sediment (or flocculent matter) clogging the washer motor (or nozzles) may occur.

⚠ WARNING

Do not top up washer fluid when the engine is at a high temperature, or when the engine is running. This is because the washer fluid contains alcohol. Spilling the fluid on the engine carries a risk of fire.

Radiator, fan

Check radiators, fans and other cooling components in the engine compartment regularly. If these parts are particularly dirty or have foreign objects, please clean them in time. If you are not sure whether it is running properly, please head to an authorised service centre for inspections.

After driving the vehicle in severe environments like wading, sand, or mud roads, please promptly check whether dirt has accumulated on the radiator, fan and other cooling parts in the engine compartment are. If dirt is found, please promptly go to the authorised service centre for inspections and cleaning.

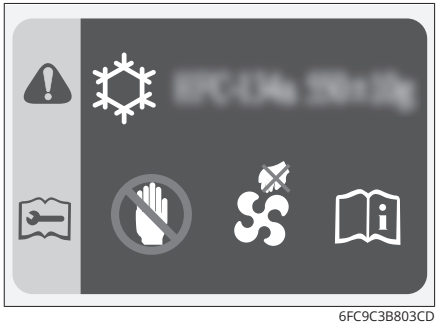
Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Please head to authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Engine compartment warning label

Type I



6FC9C3B803CD

Type II



4E621E54F230

This label is located on the engine compartment front cover plate or the front grille trim plate to remind you of the following:

- The type and filling amount of A/C refrigerant;
- The cooling fan may be started at any time. Do not put your hand into the fan shield. Otherwise, when the fan is started unexpectedly, serious personal injury may be caused.

Radiator cover warning label

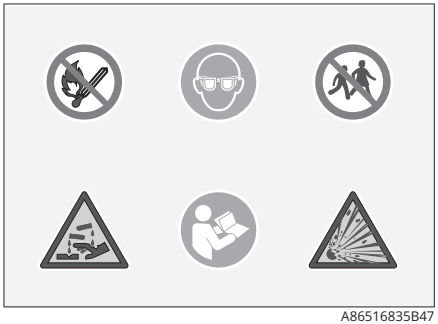


361F87CC1BAF

The label is on the radiator cap, which serves to remind you to refrain from opening the radiator cap when the engine is overheated. Otherwise, it may cause scald or the risk of coolant spillage.

Battery warning label

Type I



A86516835B47

Type II



378F054B09F7

This label is located on the battery to inform you of the following precautions before installing, removing or inspecting the battery:

- Children should keep away from the battery.
- To prevent the risk of fire or explosion, keep the battery away from high-temperature heat sources and open flames during use or charging, as it may produce flammable gases.
- The battery contains corrosive liquid.
- Take necessary protective measures such as wearing goggles during operation.

Vehicle equipment

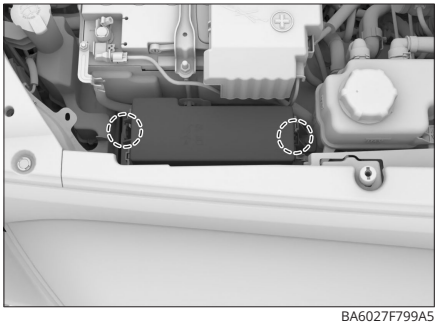
Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Fuses

If any electrical components do not work, the fuse may have been blown out. In this case, carry out the inspections based on the following operations and replace the fuses if necessary:

1. Turn off all electrical components.
2. Switch the power supply to the OFF mode, apply the parking brake, and disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
3. The fuses are located in the following positions:

> Located in the fuse box of the engine compartment



BA6027F799A5

Press and hold the pawls at the fuse box cover, and then pull up the fuse box cover at the same time to open the fuse box.

> Located in the instrument panel near the steering wheel



740CAA532DB6

Remove the storage case (fuse box cover) shown in the figure and you can see the fuse.

> Under the luggage area cover plate



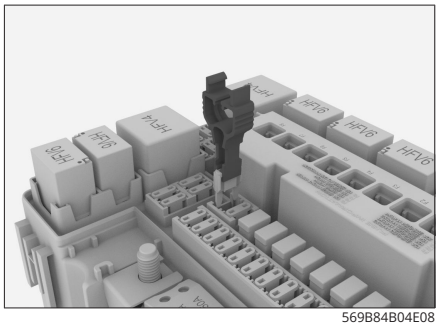
EC1C7B6DFBDA

Open the luggage area cover; press and hold the claws of the fuse box cover as shown in the figure and then pull up the fuse box cover to open it.

CAUTION

- Never let water or other liquids get into the fuse box. Otherwise, the electrical components will be damaged.
- Install the fuse box cover on the fuse box correctly. Otherwise, penetration of moisture or dirt will affect the use of fuses.

4. Use the fuse clips in the vehicle to pull out the fuses. Find the fuse of the faulty electrical appliance according to the fuse label and check it.

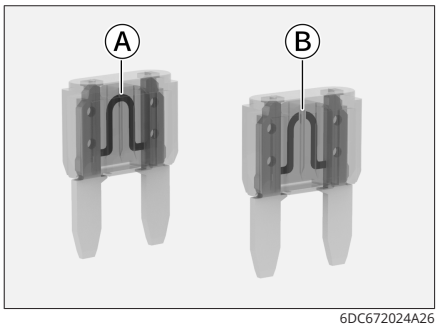


569B84B04E08

CAUTION

- The fuse clip and the spare fuse are located in the cover of the engine compartment fuse box.
- Fuse labels are attached to the cover of the engine compartment fuse box and cover of the instrument panel fuse box. With these labels, the relationship between fuses and electrical components can be determined.
- Since there may be more than one fuse causing the fault, check all the fuses that may cause the fault before the fault disappears. If the failure cannot be eliminated in the end, contact the authorised service centre for handling.

5. Check the wire inside the fuse. If it is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse with the same amperage.



6DC672024A26

Ⓐ Normal fuse

Ⓑ Blown fuse

WARNING

For blowout fuses, do not try to repair or replace them with fuses with inconsistent colours or amperages; otherwise, a fire will occur due to cable overload.

6. Check whether the electrical components return to normal operation.

CAUTION

If a spare fuse with the same amperage is blown out again in a short time or the electrical components do not return to normal operation, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical system failure. At this juncture, contact the authorised service centre for assistance in a timely manner.

Wiper blade

Replacing the front wiper blade

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

› Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.

› Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

CAUTION

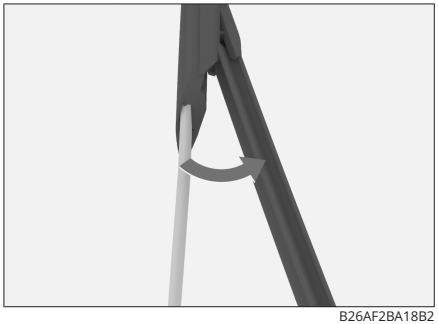
When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

CAUTION

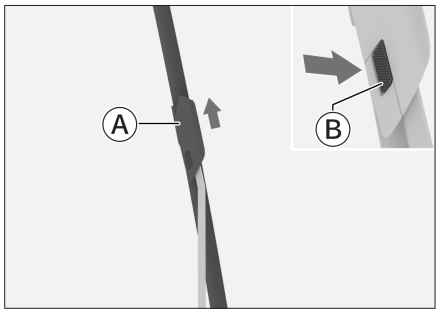
Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.

2. Rotate the wiper blade in the direction indicated to maximize the angle between it and the plastic connector.



B26AF2BA18B2

3. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



70E1DDF744AB

Ⓐ Wiper blade

Ⓑ Locking tab

Press down the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

4. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back onto the windscreen.

   For easy installation, please refer to step 2 to maximize the included angle between the wiper blade and the plastic connector.

   After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

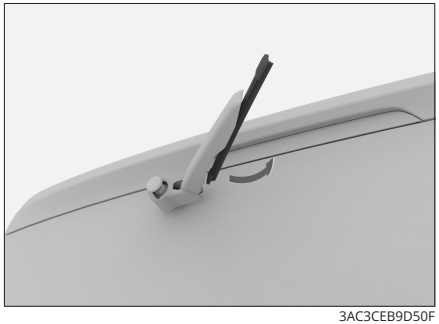
Replacing the rear wiper blade

1. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear wiper arm has a limited lift angle of about 45°. Do not over lift or use excessive force when lifting up; otherwise there is a risk of damage.

2. Pull the wiper blade in the direction shown until the blade is free of the wiper arm.



3AC3CEB9D50F

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

3. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back onto the windscreen.

Light maintenance

Light calibration

The front combination lights on a new vehicle have been calibrated at the factory. If you often carry heavy items in the vehicle, the front combination lights may need to be recalibrated. The calibration of the front combination lights should be done at the authorised service centre.

Replacing bulbs

All exterior lights are LED sources, which cannot be removed or replaced individually. In case of any issues such as damage to the light source or malfunction, it is recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not modify external lighting and signalling devices.
- Do not add external lighting and signalling devices which are not specified in the compulsory standards.

About lights fogged

Under conditions such as driving or washing vehicle on a rainy day, there may be fog inside the light cover. This is caused by the temperature difference between the inner and outer air of the lights and it is the same phenomenon as the window glass fogging on rainy days. It doesn't mean any problem in function. However, when a significant amount of water or water vapour accumulates inside the light cover, please contact the authorised service centre for assistance.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use chemical solvents or strong cleaning agents to scrub the external light cover to avoid damage to the external light cover.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre maintenance

To ensure safe driving, ensure that the tyres used suit your vehicle in their models and sizes with a good tread pattern and appropriate tyre pressure.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use tyres that are excessively worn, damaged, under-inflated, or over-inflated. Failure to do so can lead to accidents and personal injury.
- You must abide by all manual instructions regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.
- Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please handle them properly.

Off-road driving

Before off-road driving, reduce the tyre pressure to adapt to off-road driving conditions. After off-road use, reinflate the tyres to the specified tyre pressure. Insufficient inflation is the main cause of abnormal damage such as tyre cracking and flat tyre.

After driving on off-road conditions, please check the wheels and tyres for any damage. Off-road driving may damage the wheels and tyres, leading to tyre failure, vehicle loss of control, or personal injury.

Tyre check

When checking the tyre inflation, also check for any external damage, foreign objects or excessive wear, etc.

If you encounter any of the following situations, replace the tyre as soon as possible:

- There is damage and bulges on the tyre tread or sidewalls.
- There is excessive tread wear on the tyre.

Tyre pressure

Maintaining appropriate tyre pressure can maximise vehicle handling ability, tyre tread life and driving comfort.

Uneven wear of under-inflated tyres also impacts the handling of the vehicle and driving economy, and may cause tyres to go flat due to overheating.

Over-inflated tyres can cause discomfort for passenger, are more likely to be damaged by uneven roads, and wear out unevenly.

It is recommended to check the tyre pressure regularly (including the spare tyre).

Measure the tyre pressure when the tyre is cold. The measurement conducted when the vehicle is parked for more than 3 hours or its driving distance is not more than 1.5 km will get more accurate data. If you check the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot (after driving for a few kilometres), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the cold-state reading. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyre to reach the prescribed cold-state pressure. Failure to do so will lead to insufficient tyre pressure.

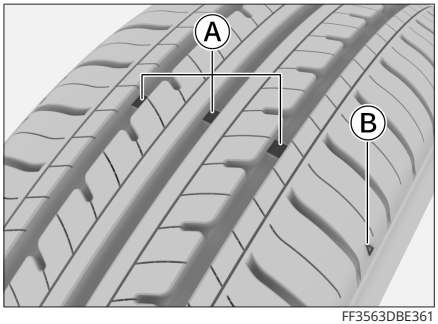
i NOTICE

Even if the tyres are in good condition, the tyre pressure may drop by 10 to 20 kPa every month. Check them regularly.

Improving efficiency through ECO tyre pressure

Set the tyre pressure to the ECO level (if available, refer to the tyre pressure label) to achieve better energy efficiency. However, this may decrease riding comfort. Adjust the pressure according to your needs.

Tyre wear



FF3563DBE361

Ⓐ Tyre wear mark

Ⓑ Tyre wear mark position diagram

i NOTICE

The tyre wear mark position diagram is a schematic representation for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

You should replace the tyres promptly once they have reached the maximum wear limit.

Continuing to use tyres with shallow treads or where the tread wear indicators are exposed can result in longer braking distances, steering failure, and flat tyre, which may lead to accidents.

If you notice uneven tyre wear or experience a continuous vibration while driving, visit the authorised service centre for inspection.

When installing new tyres, be sure to perform dynamic tyre balancing to enhance ride comfort and extend the lifespan of the tyres.

Tyre rotation

To extend the lifespan of your tyres and ensure even wear, check the tyre pressure and tread wear at least once a month. If the tread depth difference is 1.5 mm or greater, perform a tyre rotation.

The tyre rotation should be performed by professionals. It is advisable to have it handled by the authorised service centre.

Wheel balance

Unbalanced wheels can affect vehicle control performance and tyre service life. Even during normal use, the wheels may lose their balance. Therefore, balance the wheels according to the wheel dynamic balance parameters.

Avoiding tyre flatness

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for an extended period, the tyres may experience slight deformation at the contact points with the ground. This is known as "tyre flatness" and is considered normal. However, this may cause the vehicle body and the steering wheel to shake while driving. As the mileage increases, the tyre will heat up and return to its original shape, and the shaking will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for an extended period, minimise tyre flatness using any of the following methods:

- The tyre pressure can be increased to about 300 kPa, which is not suitable for normal driving. Before driving, restore the tyre pressure to the recommended level.
- Move the vehicle at least once every 30 days (15 days is optimal). Ensure that the movement causes the original force bearing point to rotate at least 90°.

Replacing tyres and wheels

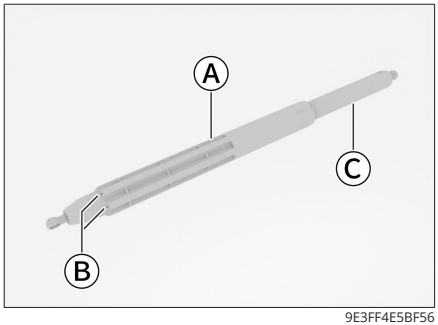
- To replace tyres, ensure the new tyres meet the same specifications as the original ones, with the same or higher load index and speed rating.
- The original tyres provided with this vehicle are the best choice for handling, comfort, and economy. Replace them with original tyres at the authorised service centre .
- Replace tyres in pairs (i.e. replace both front tyres or both rear tyres simultaneously). Avoid replacing a single tyre whenever possible. Failure to do so may affect the vehicle's braking and handling performance.
- To replace wheels, ensure the new wheels have the same specifications and sizes (such as diameter and offset) as the ones being replaced. Purchase original wheels at the authorised service centre.

WARNING

- Do not mix tyres of different manufacturers, models, tread patterns, or tread wear levels.
- Do not mix tyres of different structures, such as radial and bias ply.
- Do not mix summer, all-season and winter tyres.
- Ensure that you replace the tyres and wheels with those having correct specifications and sizes. Installing unsuitable tyres or wheels on the vehicle will affect its handling and stability, potentially leading to accidents such as collisions.

Tailgate strut maintenance

Tailgate strut



9E3FF4E5BF56

Ⓐ Protective tube

Ⓑ Protective tube exhaust vent

Ⓒ Cylinder barrel

NOTICE

The tailgate strut is only a guide. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Advices on maintenance

Silt, dirt, and foreign objects tend to gather around the rod cylinder and the exhaust port of the protective tube, which can easily infiltrate the interior and lead to seal failure. Additionally, stones or debris may become lodged between the strut and the tailgate. Closing the tailgate may result in problems like oil leakage, unusual noises, or even damage to the strut.

It is recommended to periodically open the tailgate, clear away sediment, stones, and other debris from the strut surface, and clean it with a rag and water.

CAUTION

The maintenance frequency depends on the daily driving condition and the use frequency of the tailgate.

If you are driving through sandy areas (such as deserts, unpaved roads, construction sites), it is recommended that you increase the maintenance frequency.

Protection films for new vehicles

After purchasing a new vehicle, remove the protection films in time. For example, the positions of weatherstrips, A-pillar trim plate, B-pillar trim plate, etc. outside the vehicle, and the positions of the interior handle and chrome plating trim strip in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Due to variations in vehicle shape, design, and assembly methods, the placement of the protective film may differ from what is outlined in the manual. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Sunroof maintenance

Daily maintenance frequency

The daily maintenance frequency depends on the driving condition and the use frequency of the sunroof.

If you are driving through sandy areas or areas with high rainfall levels, it is recommended that you increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

CAUTION

If the sunroof is not maintained on schedule, leakage or abnormal noise may occur to the sunroof. Adjust maintenance frequency depending on the conditions of use. For instance, in sandy zones or during seasons when there is higher usage, increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

Routine maintenance procedure

Dust and impurities may be concentrated in the sunroof seal strip, mechanical parts or rails, leading to abnormal sounds or malfunctions of the sunroof, as well as clogging the drainage system. Regularly open the sunroof, remove dust and impurities, and use clean cloth and water to wipe the sunroof seal strip surface, as well as regularly apply grease on the mechanical parts for maintenance.

Open the sunroof and check whether the sunroof shows signs of being stuck in the course of operation. If yes, please head to an authorised service centre for services.

CAUTION

› When the sunroof malfunctions, please head to a authorised service centre as soon as possible for check and maintenance.

- In cold and icy conditions, do not force open the sunroof to avoid damaging the sunroof motor and the sunroof seal strip. The sunroof should only be opened after the temperature inside the vehicle has risen and the sunroof seal strip and the roof opening have thawed.
- Open the sunroof after washing the vehicle in cold and icy conditions. Use a piece of soft, dry cloth to wipe dry the sunroof seal strip before driving.
- The sunroof must be closed fully before the vehicle enters a car wash facility. Do not allow water jets to be pointed directly at the sunroof seal strip. Prevent the seal strip from deforming under the pressure of a high-pressure water jet. Failure to do so could lead to water entering the vehicle interior and cause damage to the seal strip.
- When driving on bumpy roads or in hilly areas, do not open the sunroof fully for extended periods of time as the vibrations may cause damage to internal sunroof components.
- During the rainy season, step up checks for any sand or dust on the sunroof seal strip, and remove them in a timely manner to ensure good sealing performance of the sunroof.

Exterior maintenance

Vehicle wash

A regular vehicle wash helps to protect its appearance. Please regularly clean your vehicle.

NOTICE

The longer such corrosive substances as insects, bird droppings, tree resins, road dust, industrial fallout, tar, soot, and snow melt salt remain on the body surface, the greater the damage to the body paint. High temperatures (e.g., sun exposure) will further aggravate the corrosion effect.

To prevent damage to the vehicle paint, immediately remove corrosive substances on the body surface. Do not wait until your vehicle is due for a complete wash.

Wash your vehicle in a shady spot and not under direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, move the vehicle to a shady spot before cleaning, and wait until the body surface is cooled down.

Washing methods

1. Check for fallen leaves, bird droppings, etc. on the vehicle body.

   Remove this dirt, and then rinse immediately with clean water to avoid damaging the vehicle body surface finish.

2. Wash the vehicle thoroughly with water to remove surface dust.

   Clean your vehicle using water and a soft brush, a sponge, or a piece of soft cloth.

3. After washing and cleaning the vehicle, use a special leather or soft towel to dry off the vehicle. Do not allow the vehicle to dry out naturally, as this may cause the vehicle body to lose its lustre or generate water stains.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use acid, strong alkaline, or strong chemical cleaning agents to wash the vehicle. Prolonged soaking by strong detergents can cause severe corrosion to the body paint and bright stripes, affecting the appearance of the vehicle.
- After washing the vehicle or driving through a flooded road, depress the brake pedal lightly to make sure that the brake is functioning normally.
- When washing the vehicle in cold weather, do not flush the gaps in the keyholes or doors, etc. to prevent the lock hole or the seal strip from freezing.
- When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the fuel tank door to flush its inside.
- Before washing the vehicle, be sure to raise the windows completely and do not flush it with high-pressure water against the glass edge. High-pressure water flow can deform the seals, allowing water to enter the cabin and causing sealing failure.
- For models equipped with an externally mounted spare tire, brownish stains on the surface of the rear bumper (caused by anti-ageing agents leaching from the spare tire) can be sprayed with an alcohol solvent of 95% or higher concentration and then wiped away if they cannot be removed with clean water.

Waxing

Waxing is conducive to vehicle maintenance. Thoroughly clean the vehicle before waxing to ensure the waxing effect.

There are many types of car wax available on the market, each with different properties, so choose carefully. Using the wrong wax could cause paint discolouration rather than protecting the vehicle's body.

Under normal circumstances, consider the purpose and properties of the car wax, the age of the vehicle, the paint colour, and the driving environment when choosing a wax. For details, contact the authorised service centre or professionals.

Repairing paint surfaces

Always check the vehicle body surface for paint peeling or scratches. If such a phenomenon occurs, repair the surface immediately to prevent metal corrosion in the damaged area.

Repair paint can only be used to repair small areas of peeled-off paint or scratches. Large areas of peeled-off paint should be repaired by professionals.

Maintenance of matte lacquer finish

If your vehicle is equipped with matte paint, please note the following during maintenance and use of the vehicle:

- Never use automatic vehicle washing equipment with hard brushes to clean the vehicle. Hard brushes can damage the paint surface. It is recommended to use a soft sponge, neutral cleaning agents, and plenty of water to manually clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the body, use a gentle wiping and washing method to avoid excessive force or friction on the body; otherwise, the matte effect will be changed, and the gloss of the body will be uneven.
- Frequent long-term vehicle washes can cause the paint gloss to increase or become uneven.
- Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Please do not use paint cleaning agents, sanding materials, or polishing products such as polishing wax to treat the paint surface. as this may will damage the paint surface.
- If you accidentally apply the vehicle wax to the paint surface, please remove it immediately with silicone resin remover, and use gentle force to avoid excessive force during operation.
- Avoid resin, grease and other lipids in contact with the paint, as this can leave marks.
- Use asphalt remover to remove tar stains on the vehicle body.
- Remove insects, bird droppings and other dirt on the body in time. Use water to soften them before cleaning, or wash them carefully with a high-pressure washer. If this dirt has firmly adhered to the body, spray shellac remover before cleaning.

Liquid leakage check

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to check for fuel, oil or other liquid leaks under the vehicle before each driving. In case of obvious leakage, contact the authorised service centre for repairs.

Cavity anti-corrosion wax instructions

Cavity wax injection anti-corrosion technology is applied to the inner cavities of vehicle doors, bonnets, sill beams, and other parts. It effectively isolates water and corrosive substances from metal, enhancing the vehicle's durability and corrosion resistance and extending its service life.

When the vehicle is driving on a high-temperature or severely bumpy road, it's normal for excess yellow wax in the cavity to flow out through the water hole. You can use hot water and an appropriate amount of commercially available cleaning agent to wipe and rinse them.

Interior maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents may contain harmful substances and pose an injury risk. For cleaning the interior, it is recommended to open the doors or windows. Use only cleaning agents specifically designed for vehicle cleaning, and adhere to the instructions on the package.

⚠ CAUTION

- When cleaning the vehicle interior, ensure that water or other liquids do not flow directly into gaps in the instrument panel, the floor, or nearby electrical components, as ingress may cause malfunctions.
- Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, as this could lead to body corrosion.
- Do not spray aldehyde-removal or odor-removal agents onto leather, woven fabric, or suede-like material, as this may cause discoloration, bubbling, peeling, or other damage. If aldehyde or odor removal is necessary, purchase specialized agents through official channels such as authorised service centre authorized service providers or service centres.

Carpet

Regularly clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner. Excessive accumulation of dirt will accelerate wear.

Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition. Use a foaming detergent to clean carpets. To keep carpets as dry as possible, do not add water to the foaming detergent.

Fabric

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from the textile.

If the fabric becomes stained, clean it promptly to prevent the stain from spreading. Gently remove as much of the stain as possible by following the methods below based on the stain type.

For liquid stains, gently blot the stains with a paper towel to absorb as much of the stains as possible.

For solid dry stains, first remove as much of the residue as possible, and then use a vacuum cleaner to remove the remaining stains.

If further cleaning is required based on the result, proceed as follows:

1. Soak a clean, lint-free white cotton cloth in clean water.
2. Wring out the cloth until it is damp (not dripping).
3. Gently wipe from the outer edge of the stain towards the centre until no more dirt transfers to the cloth.
4. Allow it to air dry.

NOTICE

For stubborn stains, use a mild, neutral soap solution or a cleaner specifically designed for fabrics. Follow the cleaner's instructions. After cleaning, repeat the rinsing steps above to remove any residual soap or cleaner, then allow it to air dry.

CAUTION

- Do not use sharp objects to scrape or rub the surface, as this may damage the material.
- Do not use strong solvents such as glass cleaner.
- Stubborn stains like engine oil may be difficult to remove completely; take care to protect the fabric.

Leather

Regularly vacuum dust and dirt, paying particular attention to creases and seams.

Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with water, and then buff with another soft, dry cloth. For deeper cleaning, a dedicated leather cleaner may be used.

After using a leather cleaner, wipe it off promptly with a soft, dry cloth. Do not leave a cloth soaked with leather cleaner on any interior surface for an extended period, as some leather cleaners may cause discoloration or damage to the resins or fibres of interior fabrics.

Do not clean leather with liquids containing alcohol or other organic substances; also avoid petrol, acidic, or alkaline solutions.

Do not use brushes, hard sponges, or other abrasive tools during cleaning.

Do not apply products such as sunscreen or hand cream to the leather surface.

Avoid direct contact between the leather surface and the following items, as their exudates can cause irreversible damage:

- Silicone or gel protective/anti-slip mats.
- Protective/anti-slip mats containing PVC, rubber, or similar components.
- Other faux leather items.

Suede-like material

Regularly remove dust from the suede-like material using a soft brush, dry cloth, or vacuum cleaner.

If a stain occurs on the suede-like material surface, follow these instructions:

- Before cleaning the stain, first remove any solid debris from it. For thick spills (e.g., yoghurt, jam, etc.), gently scrape them off using a spoon or stiff card. For liquid stains, use white absorbent paper or a sponge to blot.
- Use a clean, white cloth or sponge that has been wrung out until damp.
- When cleaning the suede-like material surface, do not allow the surface to get too wet. If necessary, rinse the cloth or sponge frequently during the process.
- Remove local stains immediately. To prevent the stain from spreading, always wipe from the outer edge towards the centre.
- Do not rub vigorously, as this may spread the stain or drive it deeper into the material.
- When using a special cleaner, do not pour the cleaner directly onto the suede-like material surface.

  Do not use alkaline or alcohol-based solvent cleaners.
- Once the suede-like material has dried completely, its surface can be restored to its original state by gently brushing with a soft-bristled brush.

Rubber parts

Environmental exposure can cause soiling and loss of gloss. Clean rubber parts regularly with a rubber conditioner, especially if they show signs of wear.

To prevent damage and reduce noise, avoid using conditioners that contain silicone for routine maintenance of rubber seals. Instead, clean them with water or a suitable conditioner.

Plastic parts

NOTICE

Liquids containing alcohol or solvents (such as nitro thinners, cooling cleaners, petroleum ether-based cleaners, fuel, perfumes, cosmetics like sunscreen, insect repellents and the like) can damage the surface. Clean them with a soft microfibre cloth (slightly moistened with water).

Plastic parts include but are not limited to the following: lamp covers for vehicle lights, outlet assemblies and interior painted parts.

Windows

Clean the interior and exterior of windows with glass cleaner, and dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

CAUTION

If the rear window has heating elements on the inside, excessive wiping pressure may displace or break them. Therefore, wipe gently along the direction of the heating elements.

Seat belts

- If seat belts become soiled, clean them with a mild, warm soap solution. Do not use bleach, dyes, or cleaning solvents, as these can reduce the durability of seat belts.

  Allow the belt to air dry completely before driving.
- If the seat belt retracts slowly due to dust in the guide ring, clean the inside of the guide ring with a mild, warm soap solution.

Anti-corrosion measures

Factors that affect the corrosion rate

- The accumulation of dirt, dust, or snow in the lower part of the vehicle body can accelerate corrosion.
- Damage to the coating or other protective layer, arising from sand attacking or minor accident, may quicken corrosion.
- If the vehicle runs in areas where relative humidity is high or temperature is above freezing point, it may quicken corrosion.
- There is much salinity in the air and salt on the road of industrial pollution areas and coastal regions, which may quicken the paint corrosion.
- Rising temperature may quicken the corrosion of poorly ventilated parts.

Protecting the vehicle from corrosion

- Park the vehicle in a well-ventilated and dry place.
- Regularly use clean cold water and neutral vehicle detergent to wash the vehicle so as to keep it clean.
- Regularly check whether the paint is damaged. If damaged, repair it as soon as possible.
- Regularly check the lower part of the vehicle body. If there is sand, dirt, snow, ice or other coverings, clean them with water as soon as possible.

- Check the interior of the vehicle frequently to ensure that the carpet is dry and clean.

  When transporting chemicals, cleaning agents, fertilizers, salt, etc., take special care and use appropriate containers for transportation. If splashes or leaks are found, clean them immediately and keep them dry.
- Keep the door drain hole open so as to avoid water logging.
- If bird droppings, resin, insect carcasses, asphalt, cement, industrial dust, coal tar, gasoline, benzene or other similar objects are accumulated on the body surface, clean them as soon as possible.
- If you always drive on a deicing salt covered road, saline-alkali land, seaside and other roads containing salt, please wash off the attachments at the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and take special maintenance measures, such as chassis armour.
- If you drive regularly on sand road, please consider installing mudguard behind the wheels.

Long-term storage of the vehicle

The parking position of the vehicle should help to prevent deterioration of the vehicle condition and facilitate the restarting of the vehicle. If possible, please park your vehicle indoor.

If you need to store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), please take the following steps beforehand:

- Top up fuel.
- Clean and dry vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- Clean the inside of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- Open vehicle windows on one side slightly (if the vehicle is to be parked indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
- Use a stowed towel or piece of cloth to cushion the wiper blade from the windscreen glass.
- To reduce the risk of sticking, silicone lubricant should be applied on all door seals.
- Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle. Because plastic materials such as non-porous materials will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.
- The vehicle shall be stored in a ventilated environment, without flammable and explosive materials around.

- If possible, start the vehicle once every month, and the system will monitor the battery level automatically. If the battery level is low, the engine will run into idle charging mode. When the engine shuts down, charging is finished. If the battery level is normal, the engine will not start and you can lock the vehicle and leave the vehicle.
- The power system is behind the luggage area, so do not store flammable, combustible and corrosive objects here.
- To ensure good startability and dynamic performance, we recommend you that drive at least 2 hours every month.

7 Technical data

Vehicle identification..... 316
Overall parameters 318

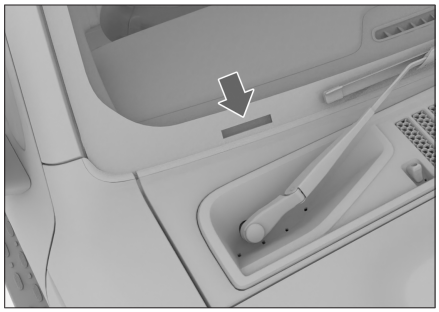
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle identification number

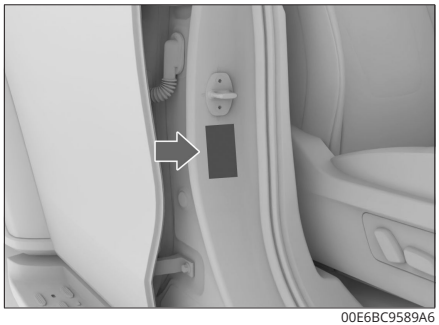
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the identity code of the vehicle and unique to each vehicle. It is engraved in the following locations:

› The upper right side of the instrument panel.



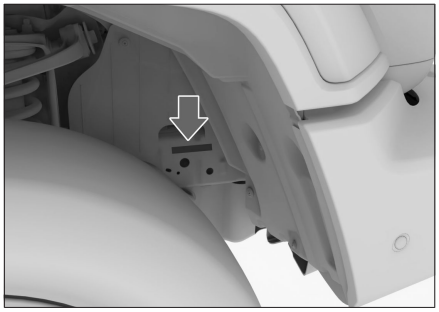
E9535FF8D1A9

› On the vehicle nameplate below the central pillar lock of the right front door.



00E6BC9589A6

› The front section of the right rail of the frame.



504BC4317385

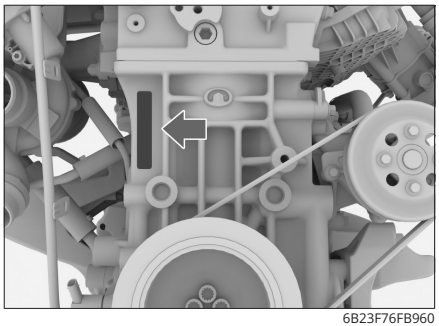
NOTICE

Due to different countries and regions, some models have the vehicle identification number marked on the front section of the left vehicle frame rail. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

NOTICE

After using the diagnostic instrument to connect the on-board diagnosis connector, you can read the vehicle identification number in the electronic control unit (ECU).

Engine number (E20NA)



6B23F76FB960

The engine number is engraved on the engine block, as shown in the figure.

NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached to the outlet pipe above the engine intake manifold.

Overall parameters

Power parameters

Engine

Item	Data
Engine model	E20NA
Engine type	Turbocharged petrol engine
Maximum net power/speed (kW/rpm)	180/5500 to 6000
Maximum net torque/speed (N•m/rpm)	380/1700 to 4000
Maximum gradeability [%]	70

Drive motor assembly

Drive motor model	TZ290XH003
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Peak power/speed/torque [kw/rpm/N•m]	78/7000/268

Generator assembly

Generator model	TZ290XH003
Rated voltage [V]	338.5

Traction battery

Traction battery model	PE338005C	PE336005C
Type	Ternary lithium ion battery	Ternary lithium ion battery
Rated voltage [V]	338.56	335.8
Rated capacity [Ah]	5.21	5
Working temperature [℃]	-30 to 60	-35 to 65

Tyre specifications

Item		Data
Specifications	Standard tyre	265/65R17 112H, 265/65R17 116H
	Spare tyre	265/65R17 112H, 265/65R17 116H
Tyre pressure		See the tyre pressure label on the lower part of the left front door pillar.

Item		Data
Tyre chain	Specifications	Tyre chain of model T150 TPU
	Installation location	Rear wheel

Wheel parameters

Item			Data
Dynamic balance parameters	Unilateral [g]		≤ 8
	Bilateral sum [g]		≤ 15
Alignment parameters	Rear wheel	Rear wheel camber	0° ± 30′ (left and right difference ≤ 30′)
		Rear wheel toe-in	0° ± 30′ (left and right difference ≤ 30′)
		Trust angle	0 ′ ± 15′
	Front wheel	Kingpin caster	4° ± 30′ (left and right difference ≤ 30′)
		Front wheel camber	11′ ± 30′ (left and right difference ≤ 30′)
		Front wheel toe-in	5′ ± 5′ (left and right difference ≤ 2′)
		Kingpin inclination	12.3° ± 30′ (left and right difference ≤ 30′)

Braking parameters

Items		Data
Brake pedal	Free travel [mm]	10.3±1
Front brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Rear brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Front brake disk	Minimum thickness [mm]	29
Rear brake disk	Minimum thickness [mm]	20

Overall parameters

Seat parameters

Items		Data
Design position of seat sliding rail		Move 40 mm forward from the last position
Design angle of seat backrest	Front seat	22°
	Rear seat	25°
Common angle of seat backrest	Front seat	22°~25°
	Rear seat	25° or 29°

Fluid parameters

Specifications of E20NA engine oil

To ensure engine performance and service life, it is recommended to use the SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil is unavailable in your area, it is recommended to use the following engine oil:

- If you choose oil products conforming to the API (American Petroleum Institute) standard, it is recommended to use fully synthetic engine oil with a medium-to-low ash content, a quality grade of SP or above, and a viscosity grade of 0W-20.
- If you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oils, it is recommended to use C5 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil.

Engine oil capacity

Engine model	Capacity [L] (reference value)	
	When changing both the oil and the oil filter element	When only changing the oil
E20NA	5.9 ± 0.1	5.5 ± 0.1

Other types of fluids

Fluid type	Specifications	Capacity [L] (reference value)
Front main reducer oil	DUAL 9 FE 75W-90	1.05 ± 0.05
Rear main reducer oil	DUAL 9 FE 75W-90	2.4 ± 0.1

Fluid type	Specifications	Capacity [L] (reference value)
Transfer case oil	MERCON LV	1.3 ± 0.1 (recommended filling amount for maintenance)
Transmission oil	GWM ATF 9	6.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance)
Coolant (engine system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (alpine regions)	9.4 ± 0.5
Coolant (electric drive system)	Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (alpine regions)	6.8 ± 0.5
Brake fluid	DOT4 synthetic brake fluid	0.84 ± 0.1
Windscreen washer fluid	--	2.0 ± 0.1

NOTICE

The above fluid capacity is the design value. The actual amount may slightly vary depending on the products, equipment and climate factors.

Radio frequency device information

Product name	Product type
Multimedia	IN9.0-OS
TPMS Sensor	TPS3.3
CEM	BDU 8.1【100】
Smart Key	3608100XKV3BA
Corner radar	CR5CBCC
Telematics BOX	T5-GLOBAL

Overall parameters

Product name	Product type
Wireless power charger device	WM-FGW-049

8 Index

Alphabetical index 324

Alphabetical index

A

A/C system 63
Airbag
  Front airbags 236
  Front passenger airbag switch 238
  Side airbag 239
Airbags
  Curtain airbags 240
All-terrain control system 117
Anti-lock brake system 172
App store 223

B

Battery 292
Bonnet 38
Bottle holder 76
Brake fluid 290
Brakeforce assist system 173
Break-in period 94

C

Catalytic converter 176
Child restraint system
  Fixing points for a child seat 243
  Recommended child seat type 244
Child safety lock 28
Crankcase emission control unit 177

D

Differential lock 123
Door lock
  Locking in emergencies 25
Door locks
  Locking and unlocking through the passive entry system 23
  Locking and unlocking with central control buttons 24
  Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key 24
  Unlocking with the interior handle 24
Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system 175

E

Electric drive system coolant 290
Electric power steering (EPS) system 174
Electronic brakeforce distribution system 173
Electronic parking brake 106
Electronic stability control system 174
Emergency cut-off system 252
Engine compartment 287
Engine oil 289
Engine overheating 275
Engine system coolant 290
Exterior maintenance 305

F

Fatigue driving warning system 140
Fluid level 288
Fluid parameters 320
Fuses 295

H

Headrests 42
HHC (Hill-start hold control) 173
Hill descent control system 171
Horn 49

I

Indicator lights 182
Instrument brightness adjustment 57
Instrument panel 178

Interior maintenance 308
Interior rearview mirror
Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror 47

J
Jump starting the vehicle 273

K
Key 18

L
Light control
Daytime running light 56
Emergency flasher 57
Front fog lights auxiliary lighting 56
Headlight height adjustment 57
Interior lights 57
Light control combination switch 53

M
Mobile phone wireless charging 70

O
OFF ROAD mode 121
On-board diagnostic system 177
Oxygen sensor 176

P
Parking assist system
Collision avoidance radar 131
Parking system
Around view monitor (AVM) 132
Parking assist 133
Parking settings 129
Reverse tracking 136
Power battery recovery 97
Power management system 192
Power parameters 318
Power supply socket 76
Power supply switch 102
Protection films for new vehicles 304

R
Radiator, fan 292
Refuelling 40
Replacing the spare tyre 265
Rollover prevention system 173
Roof rack 50

S
Seat belts 231
Seat parameters 320
Seats
Driver's seat memory/welcome 44
Front power seats 43
Front seats ventilation 43
Rear armrests 46
Rear seat adjustment 45
Secondary collision mitigation system 173
Side mirrors 47
Spare tyre 262
Spectacle case 73
Starting the vehicle 104
Steering wheel 49
Steering wheel assist mode 116
Sunroof
Opening and closing the sunroof 34
Opening and closing the sun visor 35
Sunroof maintenance 304
Sun visor 72
System manager 223

T
Tailgate
Manual tailgate 26

Tailgate strut maintenance 303
Towing 277
Traction control system 173
Trailer towing 195
Turbocharger 177
Tyre maintenance 300
Tyre pressure monitoring system 138

V

Vanity mirror 72
Vehicle anti-theft system 250
Vehicle identification number 316
Voice control 219

W

Warning lights 182
Windows 30
Windscreen washer fluid 291
Wiper control
  Automatic wiper 59